



IBM Printing Systems: Printer Information



IBM Printing Systems: Printer Information

Note

Before using this information and the products it supports, be sure to read the general information in "Notices" on page xiii.

First Edition (March 2001)

This edition applies to Release 1.0 of the *IBM Printing Systems: Printer Information*, and applies to all subsequent releases of this product until otherwise indicated in new releases or technical newsletters.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS MANUAL "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions. Therefore, this may not apply to you.

IBM does not warrant that the contents of this publication or the accompanying source code examples, whether individually or as one or more groups, will meet your requirements or that the publication or the source code is error-free.

Requests for copies of this publication and for technical information about IBM® products should be made to your IBM authorized Dealer, your IBM Marketing Representative, or your IBM Printing Systems Marketing Representative.

IBM Printing Systems welcomes your comments. For your convenience, a form for reader's comments is provided at the back of this publication. If the form has been removed, you may send your comments to the following address:

INFORMATION DEVELOPMENT
IBM PRINTING SYSTEMS
DEPARTMENT 588 BUILDING 003G
PO BOX 1900
BOULDER CO 80301-9191

If you prefer to send your comments electronically, use one of the following methods:

- Internet: printpub@us.ibm.com
- Fax: 1-800-524-1519

Internet: Visit our home page at <http://www.ibm.com/printers>

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

However, the following copyright notice protects this documentation under the Copyright laws of the United States and other countries which prohibit such actions as, but not limited to, copying, distributing, modifying, and making derivative works.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2001. All rights reserved.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Table of Contents

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| List of Figures | vii |
| List of Tables | ix |
| Notices | xiii |
| Trademarks | xiii |
| Chapter 1. Introducing IBM Printing Systems Printers | 1 |
| Printers Described in This Publication | 1 |
| Finding Additional Information About Printing | 1 |
| Advanced Function Common Control Unit (AFCCU) | 1 |
| Printer Characteristics and PSF-Supported Functions. | 2 |
| Printer Characteristics | 2 |
| AFP Font Collection | 11 |
| IPDS Functions | 14 |
| Data Streams | 18 |
| Attachment Modes for Supported Printers | 18 |
| Chapter 2. Network Printer 12 (4312) | 25 |
| Printable Area. | 26 |
| Media Specifications | 26 |
| Attachments | 27 |
| Chapter 3. Network Printer 17 (4317) | 29 |
| Printable Area. | 30 |
| Media Specifications | 30 |
| Attachments | 31 |
| Chapter 4. Infoprint Color 8 Printer (4308) | 33 |
| Printable Area. | 34 |
| Selecting the Printing Medium | 34 |
| Media Size and Configuration | 34 |
| Media Specifications | 35 |
| Attachments | 35 |
| Chapter 5. Infoprint 12 Printer (4912) | 37 |
| Printable Area. | 38 |
| Media Size and Configuration | 38 |
| Media Specifications | 38 |
| Attachments | 39 |
| Chapter 6. Infoprint 20 Printer (4320) | 41 |
| Printable Area. | 42 |
| Media Specifications | 42 |
| Attachments | 43 |
| Chapter 7. Infoprint 21 Printer (4322) | 45 |
| Printable Area. | 46 |
| Media Specifications | 46 |
| Attachments | 47 |
| Chapter 8. Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 Printers (4332) | 51 |
| Printable Area. | 53 |

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Media Specifications | 53 |
| Attachments | 54 |
| Chapter 9. Infoprint 60 Printer (3160–002) | 57 |
| Printable Area | 58 |
| Media Specifications | 59 |
| Attachments | 59 |
| Chapter 10. Infoprint 70 Printer (2770) | 61 |
| Printable Area | 62 |
| Media Specifications | 62 |
| Attachments | 63 |
| Chapter 11. Infoprint 2000 NP1 and RP1 Printers (2710–NP1, 2710–RP1) | 65 |
| Printable Area | 66 |
| Media Size and Configuration | 66 |
| Media Specifications | 66 |
| Attachments | 67 |
| Chapter 12. Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer (2710–DP1) | 69 |
| Printable Area | 70 |
| Media Specifications | 70 |
| Attachments | 71 |
| Chapter 13. Infoprint 3000–ES1 and –ED1/ED2 Printers (3300) | 73 |
| Printable Area | 74 |
| Media Specifications | 75 |
| Attachments | 75 |
| Chapter 14. Infoprint 4000 IS1– and –IS2 Printers (4000–IS1 and –IS2) | 79 |
| Printable Area | 81 |
| Media Specifications | 82 |
| Attachments | 82 |
| Chapter 15. Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 Printers (4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4) | 85 |
| Printable Area | 86 |
| Media Specifications | 87 |
| Attachments | 87 |
| Chapter 16. Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printers (4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4) | 89 |
| Printable Area | 90 |
| Media Specifications | 92 |
| Attachments | 93 |
| Chapter 17. Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 Printer (4000–ID5/ID6) | 95 |
| Printable Area | 96 |
| Media Specifications | 98 |
| Attachments | 98 |
| Chapter 18. InfoColor 70 Printer (3170–002) | 101 |
| Printable Area | 102 |
| Media Specifications | 103 |
| Attachments | 103 |
| Chapter 19. Infoprint Color 100 Printer (3170–003) | 105 |
| Printable Area | 106 |

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Media Specifications | 107 |
| Attachments | 107 |
| Chapter 20. Infoprint Color 130 Printer (3170–004) | 109 |
| Printable Area | 110 |
| Media Specifications | 111 |
| Attachments | 111 |
| Chapter 21. Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer (3170–005) | 113 |
| Printable Area | 114 |
| Media Specifications | 115 |
| Attachments | 115 |
| Chapter 22. 4230 Printer (4230) | 119 |
| Printable Area | 120 |
| Media Specifications | 120 |
| Attachments | 120 |
| Fonts | 122 |
| Operator-Adjustable Forms | 122 |
| Print-Quality Levels | 122 |
| Printer Capabilities | 124 |
| Chapter 23. 4232 Impact Printer (4232) | 125 |
| Printable Area | 126 |
| Media Specifications | 126 |
| Attachments | 126 |
| Operator-Adjustable Forms | 127 |
| Chapter 24. 4247 Printer (4247) | 129 |
| Printable Area | 130 |
| Selecting the Printing Medium | 130 |
| Specifying the Source of the Medium for a 4247-001 Printer | 130 |
| Identifying the Paper Source (Media IDs) | 130 |
| Selecting Paper Sources Compatible with Other Printers | 130 |
| Media Specifications | 131 |
| Attachments | 131 |
| Using PSF | 134 |
| Selecting AS/400 Media | 134 |
| Using GDDM | 135 |
| Using 'forms' parameters | 135 |
| Operator-Adjustable Forms | 135 |
| Print-Quality Levels for IPDS Models | 135 |
| Printer Capabilities | 137 |
| Chapter 25. 4400 Thermal Label Printer (4400) | 139 |
| Printable Area | 140 |
| Media Specifications | 140 |
| Attachments | 141 |
| Chapter 26. 6400 Line Matrix Printer (6400) | 145 |
| Printable Area | 146 |
| Media Specifications | 146 |
| Attachments | 147 |
| Operator-Adjustable Forms | 148 |
| Print-Quality Levels in IPDS Mode | 149 |
| Printer Capabilities | 150 |

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chapter 27. Infoprint 62 Printer (4370) | 151 |
| Printable Area | 153 |
| Media Specifications | 153 |
| Attachments | 153 |
| Appendix A. Migrating Your 3800 Printer Applications | 157 |
| Compatibility among PSF-Supported Printers | 157 |
| Page Presentation | 157 |
| 3800 AFP Mode | 163 |
| 3800 Compatibility Mode | 164 |
| Hardware RPQ for 3800 Compatibility | 165 |
| Performance Considerations | 165 |
| RPQ Installation Considerations | 166 |
| PSF/MVS Line Mode Function | 166 |
| How PSF/MVS Line Mode Works | 166 |
| Invoking PSF/MVS Line Mode Function | 167 |
| Considerations for Line-Merge Jobs | 168 |
| Printers Supported by PSF/MVS Line Mode | 168 |
| Implementing PSF/MVS Line Mode | 168 |
| 3900 or 4000 Installation Considerations | 169 |
| Appendix B. Font Information for IPDS Printers | 171 |
| Font Terminology, Names of Font Groups, and Font Structure | 171 |
| IBM Font Structure and Terminology | 171 |
| Tables Listing Printer-Resident Fonts | 176 |
| Abbreviations Used in the Tables | 176 |
| Fonts Resident in the AFCCU Printers | 177 |
| Appendix C. Related Publications | 185 |
| Glossary | 193 |
| Glossary | 193 |
| Source Identifiers | 193 |
| References | 193 |
| Index | 207 |

List of Figures

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. Network Printer 12 Printer | 25 |
| 2. Printable Area on the Network Printer 12 | 26 |
| 3. Network Printer 17 Printer | 29 |
| 4. Printable Area on the Network Printer 17 | 30 |
| 5. Infoprint Color 8 Printer | 33 |
| 6. Printable Area on the Infoprint Color 8 printer | 34 |
| 7. Infoprint 12 Printer | 37 |
| 8. Printable Area on the Infoprint 12 | 38 |
| 9. Infoprint 20 Printer | 41 |
| 10. Printable Area on the Infoprint 20 Printer | 42 |
| 11. Infoprint 21 Printer | 45 |
| 12. Printable Area on the Infoprint 21 Printer | 46 |
| 13. Infoprint 32 Printer | 51 |
| 14. Infoprint 40 Printer with Optional Finisher | 52 |
| 15. Printable Area on the Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 Printers | 53 |
| 16. Infoprint 60 Printer | 57 |
| 17. Recommended Printable Area for an 8.5 x 11 Inch Sheet on the Infoprint 60 Printer | 59 |
| 18. Infoprint 70 Printer | 61 |
| 19. Recommended Printable Area for an 8.5 x 11-Inch Sheet on the Infoprint 70 Printer | 62 |
| 20. Infoprint 2000–NP1 and –RP1 Printer | 65 |
| 21. Printable Area in IPDS Mode on the Infoprint 2000 NP1 and RP1 Printers | 66 |
| 22. Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer | 69 |
| 23. Printable Area in IPDS Mode on the Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer | 70 |
| 24. Infoprint 3000–ED1/ED2 Printer | 73 |
| 25. Printable Area on the Infoprint 3000–ES1 and –ED1/ED2 Printers | 75 |
| 26. Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 Printers | 79 |
| 27. Printable Area for 9.5 by 11-Inch (Narrow) and a 12 by 8.5-Inch (Wide) Roll Forms on Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 printers | 81 |
| 28. Printable Area for 9.5 by 11-Inch (Narrow) and a 12 by 8.5-Inch (Wide) Folded Forms on Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 printers | 82 |
| 29. Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 Printers | 85 |
| 30. Printable Area in IPDS Mode on the Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 Printers | 87 |
| 31. Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printers | 89 |
| 32. Recommended printable areas | 91 |
| 33. Folded Forms on the Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printers | 92 |
| 34. Folded Forms on the Infoprint–4000 ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printers | 92 |
| 35. Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 Printer | 95 |
| 36. Recommended Printable Areas on the Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 Printer | 97 |
| 37. Folded Forms on the Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 Printer | 97 |
| 38. Folded Forms on the Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 Printer | 98 |
| 39. InfoColor 70 Printer | 101 |
| 40. Printable Area in IPDS Mode on the InfoColor 70 | 103 |
| 41. Infoprint Color 100 Printer | 105 |
| 42. Printable Area on the Infoprint Color 100 Printer | 107 |
| 43. Infoprint Color 130 printer | 109 |
| 44. Printable Area on the Infoprint Color 130 Printer | 111 |
| 45. Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer | 113 |
| 46. Printable Area on the Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer | 115 |
| 47. 4230 Printer | 119 |
| 48. 4232 Impact Printer | 125 |
| 49. 4247 Printer | 129 |
| 50. 4400 Model 004 Thermal Label Printer with Validator Option Attached | 139 |
| 51. 6400 Printer | 145 |

| | | |
|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 52. | Infoprint 62 Printer | 151 |
| 53. | Printable Area in IPDS Mode on the Infoprint 62 | 153 |
| 54. | Media Origins and Print Directions for PSF-Supported Printers | 158 |
| 55. | PSF-Supplied Form Definitions. | 160 |
| 56. | Valid-Printable-Area Error: AFCCU Continuous Forms Printer Output with Incorrect Form Definition | 161 |
| 57. | Using PSF Form Definition F10101LA to Prevent Valid-Printable-Area Errors | 161 |
| 58. | Upside-Down Printing: AFCCU Continuous Forms Printers Output with Incorrect Form Definition | 162 |
| 59. | Using PSF Form Definition F1C10110 to Prevent Presentation Errors | 162 |
| 60. | No Compatibility Form Definition Required | 163 |
| 61. | Font Components | 171 |
| 62. | Composition of a Font Character Set | 172 |
| 63. | Translation of a Keyboard Character into a Printed Character | 173 |
| 64. | Part of IBM Code Page T1V10037 | 174 |

List of Tables

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 1. Workgroup Laser Printer Characteristics | 2 |
| 2. Workgroup Laser Printer Characteristics (continued) | 3 |
| 3. Cut Sheet Production Printer Characteristics | 4 |
| 4. Continuous Form Production Printer Characteristics (1 of 2) | 4 |
| 5. Production/System Printer Characteristics (2 of 2) | 6 |
| 6. Enterprise Color Printer Characteristics | 8 |
| 7. Industrial / Impact and Non-Impact Printer Characteristics (1 of 2) | 9 |
| 8. Industrial / Impact and Non-Impact Printer Characteristics (2 of 2) | 10 |
| 9. Font Support with PSF. | 12 |
| 10. Font Technologies Supported by IPDS Printers. | 12 |
| 11. Font Technologies Supported by PCL Printers | 13 |
| 12. Font Technologies Supported by PostScript Printers | 13 |
| 13. Supported IPDS Functions (1 of 2) | 14 |
| 14. Supported IPDS Functions (2 of 2) | 15 |
| 15. Bar Codes supported by IPDS Printers. | 17 |
| 16. Data Stream Transforms | 18 |
| 17. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint Color 8 | 19 |
| 18. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 12 Printer | 19 |
| 19. Attachment Modes for the Network Printer 12, Network Printer 17, Infoprint 20, Infoprint 32, and Infoprint 40 Printers | 19 |
| 20. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 21 Printer | 19 |
| 21. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 60 Printer | 20 |
| 22. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 70 Printer | 20 |
| 23. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 2000–NP1 and Infoprint 2000–RP1 Printers. | 20 |
| 24. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer | 20 |
| 25. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer with AFCCU Feature | 20 |
| 26. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 3000 Printers | 20 |
| 27. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 4000 Printers | 21 |
| 28. Attachment Modes for the InfoColor 70, Infoprint Color 100, and Infoprint Color 130 Printers | 21 |
| 29. Attachment Modes Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer | 21 |
| 30. Attachment Modes for the 4230 Printer. | 21 |
| 31. Attachment Modes for the 4232 Printer. | 22 |
| 32. Attachment Modes for the 4247 Printer. | 22 |
| 33. Attachment Modes for the 4400 Thermal Printer | 22 |
| 34. Attachment Modes for the 6400 Printer. | 22 |
| 35. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 62 Printer | 23 |
| 36. Network Printer 12 Characteristics | 25 |
| 37. PC Parallel and RS-232 Serial Interface | 27 |
| 38. Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet | 27 |
| 39. Optional Coax Interface | 27 |
| 40. Optional Twinax Interface. | 28 |
| 41. Network Printer 17 Characteristics | 29 |
| 42. PC Parallel and RS-232 Serial Interface | 31 |
| 43. Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet | 31 |
| 44. Optional Coax Interface | 31 |
| 45. Optional Twinax Interface. | 32 |
| 46. Infoprint Color 8 Printer Characteristics. | 33 |
| 47. Supported Drivers on the Infoprint Color 8 Printer. | 35 |
| 48. Supported Network Operating Systems on the Infoprint Color 8 Printer | 35 |
| 49. Infoprint 12 Characteristics | 37 |
| 50. Attachment and Operating System Support for the Infoprint 12 Printer | 39 |
| 51. Infoprint 20 Printer Characteristics | 41 |
| 52. PC Parallel Interface | 43 |

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 53. Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet | 43 |
| 54. Optional Coax Interface | 44 |
| 55. Optional Twinax Interface. | 44 |
| 56. Infoprint 21 Printer Characteristics | 45 |
| 57. Attachment/Operating System Support for the Infoprint 21 Printer | 47 |
| 58. Optional Coax Interface for the Infoprint 21 Printer | 48 |
| 59. Optional Twinax Interface for the Infoprint 21 Printer. | 48 |
| 60. Printer Drivers for the Infoprint 21 Printer | 49 |
| 61. Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 Printer Characteristics | 52 |
| 62. PC Parallel Interface | 54 |
| 63. Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet | 54 |
| 64. Optional Coax Interface | 55 |
| 65. Optional Twinax Interface. | 56 |
| 66. Infoprint 60 Printer Characteristics | 58 |
| 67. Attachments for the Infoprint 60 Printer. | 59 |
| 68. Infoprint 70 Printer Characteristics | 61 |
| 69. Software Supported on the Infoprint 70 Printer | 63 |
| 70. Infoprint 2000 NP1 and RP1 Printers' Characteristics | 65 |
| 71. Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer Characteristics | 69 |
| 72. Infoprint 3000–ES1 and –ED1/ED2 Printer Characteristics | 73 |
| 73. Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 Printer Characteristics | 79 |
| 74. Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 Printer Characteristics | 85 |
| 75. Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printer Characteristics | 89 |
| 76. Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 Printer Characteristics | 95 |
| 77. InfoColor 70 Printer Characteristics | 101 |
| 78. InfoColor 100 Printer Characteristics | 105 |
| 79. InfoColor 130 Printer Characteristics | 109 |
| 80. InfoColor 130 Plus Printer Characteristics | 113 |
| 81. 4230 Impact Printers | 119 |
| 82. 4230 Printer Print-Quality Selection Values | 122 |
| 83. 4230 Printer Symbol Sets and Corresponding Coded Fonts. | 123 |
| 84. 4232 Impact Printers | 125 |
| 85. Caption | 127 |
| 86. Caption | 127 |
| 87. 4247 Printer | 129 |
| 88. System Support Through Parallel Attachments for the 4247 Printer | 132 |
| 89. Network Operating System Support through Parallel Attachments for the 4247 Printer | 132 |
| 90. Coax Software Support for the 4247 Printer | 133 |
| 91. Twinax Software Support for the 4247 Printer. | 133 |
| 92. 4247 Printer Print-Quality Selection Values | 135 |
| 93. 4247 Printer Symbol Sets and Corresponding Coded Fonts. | 136 |
| 94. 4400 Thermal Label Printers | 139 |
| 95. Attachments for the 4400 Thermal Label Printer | 141 |
| 96. IPDS Support for the 4400 Thermal Printer. | 141 |
| 97. IPDS Support with Infoprint Manager for the 4400 Thermal Printer | 142 |
| 98. Ethernet Support for the 4400 Thermal Printer | 143 |
| 99. 6400 Line Matrix Printers | 146 |
| 100. System, Controller, and Processors Attachments for the 6400 Printer | 147 |
| 101. ASCII Support for the 6400 Printer | 147 |
| 102. Caption | 148 |
| 103. 6400 Printer Print-Quality Selection Values | 149 |
| 104. 6400 Printer Symbol Sets and Corresponding Coded Fonts. | 149 |
| 105. Infoprint 62 Printer Characteristics | 151 |
| 106. Font Width Calculation for Uniformly Spaced Fonts. | 175 |
| 107. Font Width Calculation for Mixed-Pitch Character Sets | 175 |
| 108. Font Width Calculation for Proportionally Spaced Fonts | 175 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 109. Resource Type and Resource ID Formats | 177 |
| 110. Arabic Expanded Core Fonts | 178 |
| 111. Hebrew Expanded Core Fonts | 178 |
| 112. Latin1 Expanded Core Fonts | 179 |
| 113. Latin2/3/5 Expanded Core Fonts | 179 |
| 114. Latin4 Expanded Core Fonts | 179 |
| 115. Symbols Expanded Core Fonts | 180 |
| 116. Cyrillic Greek Expanded Core Fonts | 180 |
| 117. OCR, APL, and Katakana Fonts Resident in the AFCCU Printers | 181 |
| 118. Code Pages for the Expanded Core Fonts | 181 |
| 119. Advanced Function Presentation Publications | 185 |
| 120. Data Stream and Object Architectures | 185 |
| 121. IBM AFP Fonts Publications | 185 |
| 122. IBM AFP DBCS Fonts Publications. | 186 |
| 123. IBM Infoprint Manager for AIX Publications | 186 |
| 124. IBM Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000 Publications | 186 |
| 125. IBM Infoprint Server for OS/390 V2R8- V2R10 | 186 |
| 126. IBM Infoprint Server for OS/390 V2R8- V2R10 | 186 |
| 127. Network Printer 12 Publications | 186 |
| 128. Network Printer 17 Publications | 187 |
| 129. Infoprint Color 8 Printer Publications | 187 |
| 130. InfoPrint 12 Publications. | 187 |
| 131. Infoprint 20 Printer Publications | 187 |
| 132. Infoprint 21 Printer Publications | 188 |
| 133. Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 Printer Publications | 188 |
| 134. Infoprint 60 Printer Publications | 188 |
| 135. Infoprint 70 Printer Publications | 188 |
| 136. Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer Publications | 188 |
| 137. Infoprint 62 Publications. | 189 |
| 138. Infoprint 3000 Printer Publications | 189 |
| 139. Infoprint 4000 Printer Publications | 189 |
| 140. Infoprint Color 100 Printer Publications | 189 |
| 141. Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer Publications | 189 |
| 142. 4230 Printer Publications | 189 |
| 143. 4232 Printer Publications | 189 |
| 144. 4247 Printer Publications | 190 |
| 145. 4400 Printer Publications | 190 |
| 146. 6400 Line Matrix Printer. | 190 |
| 147. Print Services Facility for OS/390 Publications | 190 |
| 148. Print Services Facility/VM Publications | 190 |
| 149. Print Services Facility/VSE Publications | 190 |
| 150. Print Services Facility for AS/400 Publications. | 191 |
| 151. Other AFP Products Publications | 191 |

Notices

References in this publication to products or services of IBM do not suggest or imply that IBM will make them available in all countries where IBM does business or that only products or services of IBM may be used. Noninfringing equivalents may be substituted, but the user must verify that such substitutes, unless expressly designated by IBM, work correctly. No license, expressed or implied, to patents or copyrights of IBM is granted by furnishing this document. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to the IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, 500 Columbus Avenue, Thornwood, NY 10594, USA.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (1) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (2) the mutual use of the information, which has been exchanged, should contact: IBM Corporation, Printing Systems Company Legal Department, Mail Drop 001W, Boulder, Colorado 80301 USA. Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

This publication is intended to help you identify differences between IBM printers and the software used to drive the printers.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of the IBM Corporation in the United States or other countries:

IBM[®]
Infoprint[®]
InfoColor[®]
AIX[®]
AS/400[®]
VM/ESA[®]
RISC System/6000[®]
RS/6000[®]
Advanced Function Common Control Unit[®]
AFCCU[®]
Advanced Function Presentation[™] (AFP)
Print Services Facility[™]
Print Services Facility for OS/390[™]
Print Services Facility/VM[™]
Print Services Facility/VSE[™]
Print Services Facility/400[™]
Print Services Facility/6000[™]

The following terms are trademarks of other companies as follows:

Netscape[®] Netscape is a registered trademark of Netscape Communications Corporation
Netscape Navigator[®] Netscape Navigator is a registered trademark of Netscape Communications Corporation
Windows[®] Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft, Corp.
Internet Explorer[™] Internet Explorer is a trademark of Microsoft, Corp.
UNIX[™] UNIX is a trademark of System Laboratories, licensed exclusively by X/Open Company, Ltd.
PostScript[®] PostScript is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
TrueType[®] TrueType is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.

PCL[®] PCL is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.
HP-UX HP-UX is a trademark of Hewlett Packard Company.
Sun Solaris Sun Solaris is a trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Chapter 1. Introducing IBM Printing Systems Printers

IBM Printing Systems offers printing hardware and software technology. Printing Systems specializes in print solutions for the enterprise delivering customized, comprehensive solutions that go beyond the printed page. Printing Systems provides innovative, efficient, and cost-effective printing solutions that link information with output across any enterprise, large or small, worldwide.

This publication is intended to help you identify differences between IBM printers and the software used to drive the printers.

Printers Described in This Publication

This publication describes the following printers:

- Chapter 2. Network Printer 12 (4312)
- Chapter 3. Network Printer 17 (4317)
- Chapter 4. Infoprint Color 8 Printer (4308)
- Chapter 5. Infoprint 12 Printer (4912)
- Chapter 6. Infoprint 20 Printer (4320)
- Chapter 7. Infoprint 21 Printer (4322)
- Chapter 8. Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 Printers (4332)
- Chapter 9. Infoprint 60 Printer (3160-002)
- Chapter 10. Infoprint 70 Printer (2770)
- Chapter 11. Infoprint 2000 NP1 and RP1 Printers (2710-NP1, 2710-RP1)
- Chapter 12. Infoprint 2000-DP1 Printer (2710-DP1)
- Chapter 13. Infoprint 3000-ES1 and -ED1/ED2 Printers (3300)
- Chapter 14. Infoprint 4000 IS1- and -IS2 Printers (4000-IS1 and -IS2)
- Chapter 15. Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 and -IR3/IR4 Printers (4000-IR1/IR2 and -IR3/IR4)
- Chapter 16. Infoprint 4000-ID1/ID2 and -ID3/ID4 Printers (4000-ID1/ID2 and -ID3/ID4)
- Chapter 17. Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 Printer (4000-ID5/ID6)
- Chapter 18. InfoColor 70 Printer (3170-002)
- Chapter 19. Infoprint Color 100 Printer (3170-003)
- Chapter 20. Infoprint Color 130 Printer (3170-004)
- Chapter 21. Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer (3170-005)
- Chapter 22. 4230 Printer (4230)
- Chapter 23. 4232 Impact Printer (4232)
- Chapter 24. 4247 Printer (4247)
- Chapter 25. 4400 Thermal Label Printer (4400)
- Chapter 26. 6400 Line Matrix Printer (6400)
- Chapter 27. Infoprint 62 Printer (4370)

Finding Additional Information About Printing

For more information about IBM printers and printing software, visit the IBM Printing Systems Internet page at:

<http://www.ibm.com/printers>

Advanced Function Common Control Unit (AFCCU)

The Advanced Function Common Control Unit (AFCCU) is the printer controller used in IPDS production printers. The heart of the AFCCU is a RISC System/6000 processor devoted to controlling printer functions and interpreting the IPDS data stream, and a set of microcode that runs on this processor. The same microcode is used across printer models, providing common IPDS functionality. However, since new functions are continually added to IPDS, newer printer models may have functions that were not shipped on older models. For details on IPDS functions available on AFCCU printers, see the *IPDS Handbook for*

Printers that Use the AFCCU, G544-3895. For a summary of IPDS functions available on AFCCU and non-AFCCU printers, see Table 13 on page 14 and Table 14 on page 15. The AFCCU printers described in this publication are:

- Chapter 9. Infoprint 60 Printer (3160-002)
- Chapter 12. Infoprint 2000-DP1 Printer (2710-DP1)
- Chapter 27. Infoprint 62 Printer (4370)
- Chapter 13. Infoprint 3000-ES1 and -ED1/ED2 Printers (3300)
- Chapter 14. Infoprint 4000 IS1- and -IS2 Printers (4000-IS1 and -IS2)
- Chapter 15. Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 and -IR3/IR4 Printers (4000-IR1/IR2 and -IR3/IR4)
- Chapter 16. Infoprint 4000-ID1/ID2 and -ID3/ID4 Printers (4000-ID1/ID2 and -ID3/ID4)
- Chapter 17. Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 Printer (4000-ID5/ID6)
- Chapter 21. Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer (3170-005)

Printer Characteristics and PSF-Supported Functions

When you prepare an application to be printed on a PSF-supported printer, you should consider certain printer characteristics. Although the printers have many capabilities and functions in common, some differences exist. This publication describes printer characteristics and functions that are important when you are:

- Preparing an application for use on only one type of printer
- Deciding which printer to use for an application
- Preparing an application for use on more than one type of printer

This publication describes the differences among printers that may affect using the printer with PSF. For more information about a specific printer or for information about other printer characteristics, refer to the printer publications.

The printer characteristics as shown in Table 1 through Table 7 are supported similarly by PSF programs on different operating systems. An example of a printer characteristic is the medium on which the printer prints: continuous forms or cut-sheet. The printer hardware determines the medium, and PSF uses what is provided.

In contrast, other PSF-supported functions can differ across operating systems and releases. For example, current releases of the PSF licensed programs support graphics and bar codes, whereas earlier releases do not.

Printer Characteristics

Table 1 through Table 7 on page 9 summarize some of the printer characteristics described in this publication.

Workgroup Laser Printers

IBM Printing Systems' workgroup laser printers are cut-sheet printers designed to support the printing needs of small to medium-sized organizations. Table 1 and Table 2 on page 3 list the characteristics of these printers.

Table 1. Workgroup Laser Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | Network Printer 12 (4312) | Network Printer 17 (4317) | Infoprint Color 8 (4308) | Infoprint 12 (4912) |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 12 ppm | 17 ppm | 8 ppm | 12 ppm |
| Print technology | Laser | Laser | Laser | Laser |
| Datastreams * Pages and ESC/P support is available only in Japan. | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE, PostScript, PCL, Pages*, ESC/P* | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE, PostScript, PCL, Pages*, ESC/P* | PCL, PostScript | PCL, PostScript |

Table 1. Workgroup Laser Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | Network Printer 12 (4312) | Network Printer 17 (4317) | Infoprint Color 8 (4308) | Infoprint 12 (4912) |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Form type | Cut Sheet | Cut Sheet | Cut Sheet | Cut Sheet |
| Number of input bins | 2 standard 1 optional | 2 standard 1 optional | 2 standard 1 optional | 2 standard 2 optional |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard 1 optional | 1 standard 2 optional | 2 standard | 1 standard 1 optional |
| Manual forms feed | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| Envelope printing | yes | yes | no | yes |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for these printers. | no* | no* | no* | no* |
| Duplex printing | yes | yes | yes (manual) | yes (manual) |
| Color | no | no | yes | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dpi | 600 dpi | 600 dpi | 300 dpi 600 dpi 1,200 dpi |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycles) | 35,000 | 65,000 | 25,000 | 20,000 |

Table 2. Workgroup Laser Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | Infoprint 20 (4320) | Infoprint 21 (4322) | Infoprint 32 (4332-001) (4332-002) (4332-003) | Infoprint 40 (4332-004) (4332-005) (4332-006) |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 20 ppm | 21 ppm | 32 ppm | 40 ppm |
| Print technology | Laser | Laser | Laser | Laser |
| Datastreams * Pages and ESC/P support is available only in Japan. | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE, PostScript, PCL, Pages*, ESC/P* | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE, PostScript, PCL | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE, PostScript, PCL, Pages*, ESC/P* | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE, PostScript, PCL, Pages*, ESC/P* |
| Form type | Cut Sheet | Cut Sheet | Cut Sheet | Cut Sheet |
| Number of input bins | 2 standard 2 optional | 2 standard 2 optional | 3 standard 3 optional | 3 standard 3 optional |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard 1 optional | 1 standard 2 optional | 1 standard 4 optional | 1 standard 4 optional |
| Manual forms feed | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| Envelope printing | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for these printers. | no* | no* | no* | no* |
| Duplex printing | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| Color | no | no | no | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dpi | 1200 dpi | 600 dpi | 600 dpi |

Table 2. Workgroup Laser Printer Characteristics (continued) (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | Infoprint 20 (4320) | Infoprint 21 (4322) | Infoprint 32 (4332-001) (4332-002) (4332-003) | Infoprint 40 (4332-004) (4332-005) (4332-006) |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycles) | 75,000 | 100,000 | 150,000 | 150,000 |

Cutsheet Production Printers

IBM Printing Systems' cut sheet production printers are heavy-duty, full-function printers with multiple connectivity options. Table 3 lists the characteristics for these printers.

Table 3. Cut Sheet Production Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | Infoprint 60 (3160-002) | Infoprint 70 (2770) | Infoprint 2000 (2710-NP1) (2710-RP1) | Infoprint 2000 (2710-DP1) |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 60 ppm | 70 ppm | 110 ppm | 110 ppm |
| Print technology | Laser | Laser | Laser | Laser |
| Datastreams | IPDS, PCL | IPDS | PostScript 3, PCL6, PDF | IPDS, LCDS/Metacode, PCL6, PostScript 3, PDF |
| Form type | Cut Sheet | Cut Sheet | Cut-Sheet | Cut-Sheet |
| Number of input bins | 3 standard 1 optional | 4 standard 1 optional | 3 standard | 3 standard |
| Number of output bins | 2 standard 2 optional | 2 standard 1 optional | 1 standard | 1 standard |
| Manual forms feed | no | no | no | no |
| Envelope printing | no | no | no | no |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for these printers. | no* | no* | no | no |
| Duplex printing | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| Color | no | no | no | no |
| Printhead resolution | 240 dpi 300 dpi 600 dpi | 600 dpi | 600 dpi | 600 dpi |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycles) | 750,000 | 400,000 | 2,000,000 | 2,000,000 |

Continuous Form Production Printers

IBM Printing Systems' continuous form production printers are high-speed, high capacity printers. Table 4 and Table 5 on page 6 lists the characteristics for these printers.

Table 4. Continuous Form Production Printer Characteristics (1 of 2)

| Printer Characteristics | Infoprint 3000 (3300-ES1) | Infoprint 3000 (3300-ED1/ED2) | Infoprint 4000 Simplex (4000-IS1) | Infoprint 4000 Simplex (4000-IS2) ¹ |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Print technology | Laser | Laser | Laser | Laser |
| Datastreams | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS |

Table 4. Continuous Form Production Printer Characteristics (1 of 2) (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | Infoprint 3000 (3300-ES1) | Infoprint 3000 (3300-ED1/ED2) | Infoprint 4000 Simplex (4000-IS1) | Infoprint 4000 Simplex (4000-IS2) ¹ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Form type | Continuous | Continuous | Continuous | Continuous |
| Number of input bins | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard |
| Manual forms feed | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| MICR printing *With either RPQ 8B4013 or 8B4018 installed | no | no | yes* | yes* |
| Duplex printing | no | yes | no | no |
| Color *With the IBM 4005 Infoprint Hi-Lite Color printer attached ² | no | no | yes* | yes* |
| Printhead resolution | 480 dpi 600 dpi | 480 dpi 600 dpi | 240 dpi 300 dpi | 240 dpi 300 dpi |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11) | | | | |
| inches per second | 15.9 | 15.9 | 32.5 | 46 |
| inches per minute | 954 | 954 | 1,950 | 2,760 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ³ | | | | |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 112 | 112 | 229 | 324 |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | n/a | 224 | n/a | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | 172 | 172 | 354 | 501 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | n/a | 344 | n/a | n/a |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | | | | |
| mm per second | 404 | 404 | 825 | 1168 |
| mm per minute | 24,231 | 24,231 | 49,530 | 70,104 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ³ | | | | |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 115 | 115 | 235 | 333 |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | n/a | 230 | n/a | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | 162 | 162 | 333 | 472 |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | n/a | 324 | n/a | n/a |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ⁴ | | | | |
| Letter: 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 2,800,000 simplex | 5,800,000 duplex | 5,600,000 simplex | 8,000,000 simplex |
| Letter: 2-up portrait (11 inches long) | 4,400,000 simplex | 8,800,000 duplex | 8,700,000 simplex | 12,300,000 simplex |

Table 4. Continuous Form Production Printer Characteristics (1 of 2) (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | Infoprint 3000 (3300-ES1) | Infoprint 3000 (3300-ED1/ED2) | Infoprint 4000 Simplex (4000-IS1) | Infoprint 4000 Simplex (4000-IS2) ¹ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| A4: 1-up landscape (210 mm long) | 3,000,000 simplex | 6,000,000 duplex | 5,700,000 simplex | 8,100,000 simplex |
| A4: 2-up portrait (297 mm long) | 4,000,000 simplex | 8,000,000 duplex | 8,200,000 simplex | 11,500,000 simplex |
| <p>1. The 4000-IS2 printer was originally shipped with a print speed of 44 inches per second. All 4000-IS2 printers shipped after February 17, 1998 (or with upgrades 9324 or 4260 installed) have a print speed of 46 inches per second.</p> <p>2. The IBM Infoprint 4005 Hi-Lite Color post-processor provides a high-speed, high quality, all-points-addressable (APA) color printing system to complement the industry-leading quality and reliability the IBM Infoprint 4000 Wide or Wide Duplex printers (240 dpi models). Visit the IBM Printing Systems Internet page at http://www.ibm.com/printers for more information about the Infoprint 4005.</p> <p>3. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>4. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | | | | |

Table 5. Production/System Printer Characteristics (2 of 2)

| Printer Characteristics | Infoprint 4000 (4000 IR1/IR2) | Infoprint 4000 (4000 IR3/IR4) | Infoprint 4000 (4000 ID1/ID2) | Infoprint 4000 (4000 ID3/ID4) | Infoprint 4000 (4000 ID5/ID6) |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Print technology | Laser | Laser | Laser | Laser | Laser |
| Datastreams | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS |
| Form type | Continuous | Continuous | Continuous | Continuous | Continuous |
| Number of input bins | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard |
| Manual forms feed | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| MICR printing *With either RPQ 8B4013 or 8B4018 installed | no | no | yes* | no | yes* |
| Duplex printing | yes | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| Color *With the IBM 4005 Infoprint Hi-Lite Color printer attached ¹ | no | no | yes* | yes* | yes* |
| Printhead resolution | 480 dpi 600 dpi | 480 dpi 600 dpi | 240 dpi 300 dpi | 240 dpi 300 dpi | 480 dpi 600 dpi |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | | | | | |
| inches per second | 21.3 | 32.5 | 32.5 | 46 | 46 |
| inches per minute | 1,278 | 1,950 | 1,950 | 2,760 | 2,760 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ² | | | | | |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 150 | 229 | 229 | 324 | 324 |

Table 5. Production/System Printer Characteristics (2 of 2) (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | Infoprint 4000 (4000 IR1/IR2) | Infoprint 4000 (4000 IR3/IR4) | Infoprint 4000 (4000 ID1/ID2) | Infoprint 4000 (4000 ID3/ID4) | Infoprint 4000 (4000 ID5/ID6) |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | 300 | 458 | 458 | 648 | 648 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | 232 | 354 | 354 | 501 | 501 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | 464 | 708 | 708 | 1,002 | 1,002 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | | | | | |
| mm per second | 541 | 825 | 825 | 1168 | 1168 |
| mm per minute | 32,461 | 49,530 | 49,530 | 70,104 | 70,104 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ² | | | | | |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 154 | 235 | 235 | 333 | 333 |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | 308 | 470 | 470 | 666 | 666 |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | 218 | 333 | 333 | 472 | 472 |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | 436 | 666 | 666 | 944 | 944 |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ³ | | | | | |
| Letter: 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 7,300,000 (duplex) | 11,200,000 (duplex) | 11,200,000 (duplex) | 16,000,000 (duplex) | 16,000,000 (duplex) |
| Letter: 2-up portrait (11 inches long) | 11,300,000 (duplex) | 17,400,000 (duplex) | 17,400,000 (duplex) | 24,600,000 (duplex) | 24,600,000 (duplex) |
| A4: 1-up landscape (210 mm long) | 7,500,000 (duplex) | 11,600,000 (duplex) | 11,600,000 (duplex) | 16,300,000 (duplex) | 16,300,000 (duplex) |
| A4: 2-up portrait (297 mm long) | 10,700,000 (duplex) | 16,700,000 (duplex) | 16,700,000 (duplex) | 23,000,000 (duplex) | 23,000,000 (duplex) |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The IBM Infoprint 4005 Hi-Lite Color post-processor provides a high-speed, high quality, all-points-addressable (APA) color printing system to complement the industry-leading quality and reliability the IBM Infoprint 4000 Wide or Wide Duplex printers (240 dpi models). Visit the IBM Printing Systems Internet page at http://www.ibm.com/printers for more information about the Infoprint 4005. 2. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate. 3. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis. | | | | | |

Enterprise Color Printers

IBM Printing Systems' enterprise color printers are web-fed, full-color printers. Table 6 on page 8 lists the characteristics for these printers.

Table 6. Enterprise Color Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | InfoColor 70 (3170-002) (3170-02D) | Infoprint Color 100 (3170-03D) | Infoprint Color 130 (3170-004) | Infoprint Color 130 Plus (3170-005) |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Print technology | Electro- photographic | Electro- photographic | Electro- photographic | Electro- photographic |
| Datastreams | PostScript | PostScript | PostScript | IPDS |
| Form type | Continuous | Continuous | Continuous | Continuous |
| Number of input bins | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard |
| Manual forms feed | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| MICR printing | no | no | no | no |
| Duplex printing | yes | yes | no | no |
| Color selection | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dpi | 600 dpi | 600 dpi | 600 dpi |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | | | | |
| inches per second | 3.4 | 4.8 | 6.3 | 6.3 |
| inches per minute | 204 | 289 | 378 | 378 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ¹ | | | | |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 35 | 34 | 44 | 44 |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | 70 | 68 | 138 | 138 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | n/a | 52 | 68 | 68 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | n/a | 105 | 136 | 136 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | | | | |
| mm per second | 86 | 122.5 | 160 | 160 |
| mm per minute | 5160 | 7350 | 9,600 | 9,600 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ¹ | | | | |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 35 | 34 | 44 | 44 |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | 70 | 68 | 138 | 138 |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | n/a | 52 | n/a | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | n/a | 105 | n/a | n/a |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ² | | | | |
| Letter: 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 680,000 duplex | 680,000 duplex | 680,000 duplex | 680,000 duplex |
| Letter: 2-up portrait (11 inches long) | n/a | 1,050,000 duplex | 1,050,000 duplex | 1,050,000 duplex |

Table 6. Enterprise Color Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | InfoColor 70 (3170-002) (3170-02D) | Infoprint Color 100 (3170-03D) | Infoprint Color 130 (3170-004) | Infoprint Color 130 Plus (3170-005) |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| A4: 1-up landscape (210 mm long) | 700,000 duplex | 700,000 duplex | 700,000 duplex | 700,000 duplex |
| A4: 2-up portrait (297 mm long) | n/a | 1,000,000 duplex | 1,000,000 duplex | 1,000,000 duplex |
| <p>1. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>2. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | | | | |

Industrial Impact and Non-Impact Printers

IBM Printing Systems' industrial impact and non-impact printers are cost-effective, rugged impact and non-impact printers that print on a wide variety of media. Table 7 and Table 8 on page 10 lists the characteristics for these printers.

Table 7. Industrial / Impact and Non-Impact Printer Characteristics (1 of 2)

| Printer Characteristics | 4230-xx1 4230-xx2 4230-xx3 | 4232 | 4247-A00/001 4247-002 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate: characters per second (cps) Maximum printing rate: lines per minute (lpm) Maximum printing rate: inches per second (ips) | 375 cps (-xx1) 480 cps (-xx1) 600 cps (-xx1) | 600 cps | 700 cps (A00/001) 400 (002) |
| Print technology | Impact Dot Matrix | Impact Dot Matrix | Impact Dot Matrix |
| Datastreams | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS |
| Form type | Continuous Cut-Sheet | Continuous Cut-Sheet | Continuous Cut-Sheet |
| Number of input bins | 1 standard | 1 standard | 3 standard 3 optional |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard |
| Manual forms feed *An Automatic Sheet Feed Device is available. | yes | yes | yes* |
| Envelope printing | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| MICR printing | no | no | no |
| Duplex printing | no | no | no |
| Color | no | no | no |
| Operator-adjustable forms | yes | yes | yes |
| Printhead resolution (pels per inch) | 144 X 144 | 144 X 144 | 144 X 144 |
| Maximum characters per second (cps) per month (duty cycles) | 16,000,000 | 16,000,000 | 20,000,000 |

Table 8. Industrial / Impact and Non-Impact Printer Characteristics (2 of 2)

| Printer Characteristics | 6400-050/P50 6400-010/P10 6400-015 | 4400 Thermal Printer 4400-004 4400-006 4400-008 | Infoprint 62 (4370-002) (4370-003) |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate: characters per second (cps) Maximum printing rate: lines per minute (lpm) Maximum printing rate: inches per second (ips) | 500 lpm (050/P50) 1000 lpm (010/P10) 1500 lpm (015) | Models 004/006 8 ips at 300 dpi 10 ips at 203 dpi Model 008 6 ips at 300 dpi 8 ips at 203 dpi | n/a |
| Print technology | Line Matrix | Thermal | Light Emitting Diode |
| Datastreams | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS | ASCII, Code V and IGP, IPDS, SCS | IPDS |
| Form type | Continuous | Continuous | Continuous |
| Number of input bins | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard | 1 standard | 1 standard 1 optional |
| Manual forms feed *An Automatic Sheet Feed Device is available. | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| MICR printing | no | no | no |
| Duplex printing | no | no | no |
| Color | no | no | no |
| Operator-adjustable forms | yes | yes | n/a |
| Printhead resolution (pels per inch) | 120 X 144 | 203 dpi 300 dpi | 240 dpi (4370-002) 300 dpi (4370-003) |
| Maximum characters per second (cps) per month (duty cycles) | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11) | | | |
| inches per second | n/a | | 8.8 |
| inches per minute | | | 528 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ¹ | | | |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | n/a | | 62 |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | | | n/a |
| 2-up portrait 11 inches long (simplex) | | | n/a |
| 2-up portrait 11 inches long (duplex) | | | n/a |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 mm x 297 mm) | | | |
| mm per second | n/a | | 1574 |
| mm per minute | | | 13,411 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ¹ | | | |

Table 8. Industrial / Impact and Non-Impact Printer Characteristics (2 of 2) (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | 6400-050/P50 6400-010/P10 6400-015 | 4400 Thermal Printer 4400-004 4400-006 4400-008 | Infoprint 62 (4370-002) (4370-003) |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | n/a | | 64 |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | | | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | | | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | | | n/a |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ² | | | |
| Letter: 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) | n/a | | 600,000 simplex |
| Letter: 2-up portrait (11 inches long) | | | n/a |
| A4: 1-up landscape (210 mm long) | | | 600,000 simplex |
| A4: 2-up portrait (297 mm long) | | | n/a |
| <p>1. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>2. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | | | |

AFP Font Collection

The AFP Font Collection provides a comprehensive set of fonts and utility programs that enable you to optimize font usage on Advanced Function Printing devices. The fonts provided by this product, or transformed using its utilities, can be installed on any IBM operating system, providing consistency across platforms and AFP printers. Resident IPDS fonts are supplied for the printers marketed by IBM Printing Systems. The single-byte raster and outline fonts shipped with the AFP Font Collection are already marked correctly for activating resident fonts and for capturing fonts.

A raster font is a sequence of dots that form the character. The number of dots per inch that a printer generates is called the print resolution, or density. A resolution of 240 pels means that a printer prints 240 pels per inch both vertically and horizontally, or 57,600 pels per square inch (240 x 240). The ability to print at a given pel density is determined by the type of printer. Because IBM fonts are provided for specific resolutions, different fonts are available for printers with different resolutions (for example, 240-pel and 300-pel printers).

Outline fonts describe their characters by mathematical formulas rather than by pels. These formulas are used by rasterizing software to create bitmap characters based on two variables: resolution and point size. This means that a single outline font can offer many print resolutions and point sizes.

The Font Collection Version 2 product numbers are: 5648-B33 (MVS, VM, and VSE) and 5648-B45 (AIX, OS/400, and OS/2). For more information, see the Printing Systems web site at:

<http://www.ibm.com/printers>

Font Technologies

Resident fonts are installed in the printer and are always available. Their use can significantly decrease the amount of data that must be sent to the printer across communication lines. A list of which resident fonts are available on the printer can usually be obtained from the printer's menu.

Downloaded fonts are sent from the print server and generally disappear after the job has finished printing. Downloaded fonts can also be “captured” by the printer. Captured fonts automatically become new temporary resident fonts, which improves performance on future jobs that use the same fonts. The printer manages the captured font library, not the print server.

Font Support with PSF and Infoprint Manager: Outline, raster, SBCS and DBCS fonts are supported by Print Services Facility and Infoprint Manager on most operating systems as download, resident, or captured fonts. Table 9 list the font technologies supported by PSF.

Table 9. Font Support with PSF

| Operating System | Download | Resident | Captured |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------|----------|----------|
| PSF for OS/390 | yes | yes | yes |
| PSF/MVS | yes | yes | yes |
| PSF/VSE | yes | yes | yes |
| PSF/VM | yes ¹ | yes | no |
| PSF/400 | yes | yes | yes |
| Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000 | yes | yes | no |
| Infoprint Manager for AIX | yes | yes | no |

1. PSF/VM does not download outline fonts.

Font Support with IPDS Printers: The following table summarizes the font technologies supported by Printing System IPDS printers.

Table 10. Font Technologies Supported by IPDS Printers

| Printer | Single-Byte Raster | Single-Byte Outline | Double-Byte Raster | Double-Byte Outline |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Network Printer 12 | Downloaded | | Downloaded | |
| Network Printer 17 | Downloaded | | Downloaded | |
| Infoprint 20 printer | Downloaded | Downloaded Resident | Downloaded | Downloaded Resident ¹ |
| Infoprint 21 printer | Downloaded | Downloaded Resident | Downloaded | Downloaded Resident ¹ |
| Infoprint 32 printer Infoprint 40 printer | Downloaded | Downloaded Resident | Downloaded | Downloaded Resident ¹ |
| Infoprint 60 printer | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture |
| Infoprint 62 printer | Downloaded Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture |
| Infoprint 2000–DP1 printer | Downloaded Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture |
| Infoprint 3000 printers | Downloaded Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture |

Table 10. Font Technologies Supported by IPDS Printers (continued)

| Printer | Single-Byte Raster | Single-Byte Outline | Double-Byte Raster | Double-Byte Outline |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 printer Infoprint 4000–IR3/IR4 printer | Downloaded Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture |
| Infoprint 4000–IS1 printer Infoprint 4000–IS2 printer Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 printer Infoprint 4000–ID3/ID4 printer Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 printer | Downloaded Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded (240 dpi) Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture |
| Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer | Downloaded Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture | Downloaded Resident Capture |
| 4230 Printer 4247 Printer 6400 Printer | Resident | Resident | Resident | Resident |
| 1. With the IPDS DBCS font feature. | | | | |

Font Support with PCL Printers: The following table summarizes the font technologies supported by Printing System PCL printers.

Table 11. Font Technologies Supported by PCL Printers

| Printer | Internal (resident) | Disk (additional) | Downloadable (Soft) |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Infoprint Color 8 | yes | no | no |
| Infoprint 12 printer | yes | no | no |
| Network Printer 12 | yes | no | yes |
| Network Printer 17 | yes | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 20 printer | yes | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 21 printer | yes | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 32 printer Infoprint 40 printer | yes | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 60 printer | yes | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 2000–NP1/RP1 printers | yes | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 3000 printers | yes | yes | yes |

Font Support with PostScript Printers: The following table summarizes the font technologies supported by Printing System PostScript printers.

Table 12. Font Technologies Supported by PostScript Printers

| Printer | Internal | Downloadable (Soft) |
|--------------------|----------|---------------------|
| Infoprint Color 8 | yes | no |
| Network Printer 12 | yes | no |

Table 12. Font Technologies Supported by PostScript Printers (continued)

| Printer | Internal | Downloadable (Soft) |
|---------------------------------|----------|---------------------|
| Network Printer 17 | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 20 printer | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 21 printer | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 32 printer | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 40 printer | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 2000–NP1/RP1 printers | yes | yes |
| Infoprint 3000 printers | yes | yes |

Network Printer Resource Utility

The Network Printer Resource Utility (NPRU) is an application for Workgroup printers that provides a repository (resource inventory) for fonts and overlays (macros) on a workstation with access to an IBM printer. Once a font or overlay has been added to the NPRU inventory, it can be downloaded to temporary or permanent RAM on the printer or to a Flash or Hard Drive option if available.

The font formats supported are PCL Intellifonts, TrueType, and PostScript Type1. Fonts and overlays that are downloaded are available to workstation applications when the network printer drivers are selected. NPRU is a separate program that uses the printer drivers to download.

See the Setup CD-ROM for individual Workgroup printers for information about the systems that NPRU supports.

IPDS Functions

Table 13 and Table 14 summarizes the IPDS functions supported by each printer.

Table 13. Supported IPDS Functions (1 of 2)

| | Network Printer 12 Network Printer 17 | Infoprint 20 Infoprint 21 Infoprint 32 Infoprint 40 | Infoprint 60 | Infoprint 70 |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| N_UP | no | no | yes | no |
| N_UP Enhanced | no | no | yes | no |
| Cut-Sheet Emulation | no | no | no | no |
| Print Quality Selection | no | yes | no | yes |
| Set Media Size | no | no | no | no |
| Select Media Modification | no | no | no | no |
| Media Source by Copy | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| Media ID by Name | no | no | yes | no |
| Media ID by OID | no | Infoprint 21 only | no | yes |
| Maximum Mapped Page Overlay | 254 | 254 | 32,511 | 254 |
| Page Overlay Rotation | no | no | yes | no |
| Maximum Mapped Page Segment | 127 | 127 | 32,511 | 127 |
| Changeable Media Origin | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| Logical Page and Object Coloring | no | no | Prints black, color of medium, or percentage of coverage | no |

Table 13. Supported IPDS Functions (1 of 2) (continued)

| | Network Printer 12 Network Printer 17 | Infoprint 20 Infoprint 21 Infoprint 32 Infoprint 40 | Infoprint 60 | Infoprint 70 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PTOCA PT2 Set Text Color Set Extended Text Color | yes accept no | yes accept accept | yes accept accept | yes accept accept |
| IM1 Image OCA Color | yes accept | yes accept | yes accept | yes accept |
| IOCA FS10 Image G4 MMR Comp. G3 MR Comp. G3 MH Comp. IBM MMR Comp. ABIC Bi-Level Comp. RL4 OCA Color Unpadded RIDIC Replicate and Trim Scale to Fill | yes yes yes no yes no yes accept no yes no | yes yes yes no yes no yes accept no yes no | yes yes yes yes yes yes no accept yes yes yes | yes yes yes no yes no yes accept no yes no |
| IOCA FS42 and FS45 | no | no | no | no |
| GOCA DR2/V0 OCA Colors Process Colors Simulate OCA color with pattern Simulate highlight color with shading Partial Arc Box command | yes accept no no no no no | yes accept accept yes no yes yes | yes accept accept yes yes yes yes | yes accept accept yes no yes yes |
| EPS Object | no | no | no | no |
| BCOCA | See Table 15 on page 17 for more information about BCOCA data and these printers. | | | |
| FOCA | See Table 10 on page 12 for more information about FOCA data and these printers. | | | |

Table 14. Supported IPDS Functions (2 of 2)

| | Infoprint 2000 Model DP1 | Infoprint 3000 Infoprint 4000 | Infoprint Color 130 Plus | 4230 Printer 4247 Printer 4400 Thermal Printer 6400 Printer | Infoprint 62 |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| N_UP | yes | yes | yes | no | yes |
| N_UP Enhanced | yes | yes | yes | no | yes |
| Cut-Sheet Emulation | no | yes | yes | no | yes |
| Print Quality Selection | no | no | no | yes | no |
| Set Media Size | no | no | no | yes | no |
| Select Media Modification | no | yes | yes | no | yes |
| Media Source by Copy | yes | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a |
| Media ID by Name | yes | yes | yes | no | yes |
| Media ID by OID | no | no | no | no | no |

Table 14. Supported IPDS Functions (2 of 2) (continued)

| | Infoprint 2000 Model DP1 | Infoprint 3000 Infoprint 4000 | Infoprint Color 130 Plus | 4230 Printer 4247 Printer 4400 Thermal Printer 6400 Printer | Infoprint 62 |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum Mapped Page Overlay | 32,511 | 32,511 | 32,511 | 254 | 32,511 |
| Page Overlay Rotation | yes | yes | yes | no | yes |
| Maximum Mapped Page Segment | 32,511 | 32,511 | 32,511 | 127 | 32,511 |
| Changeable Media Origin | yes | yes | yes | no | yes |
| Logical Page and Object Coloring | Prints black, color of medium or percentage coverage | | yes | no | Prints black, color of medium or percentage coverage |
| PTOCA PT2 Set Text Color Set Extended Text Color | yes accept accept | yes accept accept | yes accept accept | yes accept no | yes accept accept |
| IM1 Image OCA Color | yes accept | yes accept | yes yes | yes accept | yes accept |
| IOCA FS10 Image | yes | yes | yes | no | yes |
| G4 MMR Comp. | yes | yes | yes | n/a | yes |
| G3 MR Comp. | yes | yes | yes | n/a | yes |
| G3 MH Comp. | yes | yes | yes | n/a | yes |
| IBM MMR Comp. | yes | yes | yes | n/a | yes |
| ABIC Bi-Level Comp. | yes | yes | yes | n/a | yes |
| RL4 | no | no | no | n/a | no |
| OCA Color | accept | accept | yes | n/a | accept |
| Unpadded RIDIC | yes | yes | no | n/a | no |
| Replicate and Trim | yes | yes | yes | n/a | yes |
| Scale to Fill | yes | yes | no | n/a | yes |
| IOCA FS42 Image | no | no | yes | no | no |
| IOCA FS45 Image | | | yes | | |
| GOCA DR2/V0 OCA Colors | yes accept | yes accept | yes yes | yes accept | yes accept |
| Process Colors | accept | accept | yes | no | accept |
| Simulate OCA color with pattern | yes | yes | n/a | no | yes |
| Simulate highlight color with shading | yes | yes | n/a | no | yes |
| Partial Arc | yes | yes | yes | no | yes |
| Box command | yes | yes | yes | no | no |
| EPS Object | no | no | no | no | no |
| BCOCA | See Table 15 on page 17 for more information about BCOCA data and these printers. | | | | |
| FOCA | See Table 10 on page 12 for more information about FOCA data and these printers. | | | | |

Table 15. Bar Codes supported by IPDS Printers

| Bar Code Type | Modifier | 4230 Printer 4247 Printer 4400 Printer 6400 Printer | Network Printer 12 Network Printer 17 Infoprint 12 Infoprint 20 Infoprint 21 Infoprint 32 Infoprint 40 | Infoprint 4000 Infoprint 3000 Infoprint 60 Infoprint 62 Infoprint 70 Infoprint Color 130 Plus |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| X'01' — Code 39 (3-of-9) AIM USS-39 | X'01' and X'02' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'02' — MSI (modified Plessey code) | X'01' through X'09' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'03' — UPC/CGPC Version A | X'00' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'05' — UPC/CGPC Version E | X'00' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'06' — UPC — Two Digit Supplemental | X'00' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'06' — UPC — Two Digit Supplemental | X'01' and X'02' | no | no | yes |
| X'07' — UPC — Five Digit Supplemental | X'00' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'07' — UPC — Five Digit Supplemental | X'01' and X'02' | no | no | yes |
| X'08' — EAN 8 (includes JAN-short) | X'00' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'09' — EAN 13 (includes JAN-standard) | X'00' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'0A' — Industrial 2-of-5 | X'01' and X'02' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'0B' — Matrix 2-of-5 | X'01' and X'02' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'0C' — Interleaved 2-of-5, AIM USS-1 2/5 | X'01' and X'02' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'0D' — Codabar, 2-of-7, AIM USS-Codabar | X'01' and X'02' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'11' — Code 128, AIM USS-128 (includes UCC/EAN-128) | X'02' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'16' — EAN Two-digit Supplemental | X'00' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'16' — EAN Two-digit Supplemental | X'01' | no | no | yes |
| X'17' — EAN Five-digit Supplemental | X'00' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'17' — EAN Five-digit Supplemental | X'01' | no | no | yes |
| X'18' — POSTNET | X'00' through X'03' | yes | yes | yes |
| X'1A' — RM4SCC (Royal Mail, UK) | X'00' | no | yes | yes |
| X'1A' — RM4SCC (Royal Mail, Dutch Kix) | X'01' | no | Infoprint 21 | no |
| X'1B' — Japan Postal Bar Code | X'00' through X'01' | no | Infoprint 20 Infoprint 21 Infoprint 32 Infoprint 40 | yes |

Table 15. Bar Codes supported by IPDS Printers (continued)

| Bar Code Type | Modifier | 4230 Printer 4247 Printer 4400 Printer 6400 Printer | Network Printer 12 Network Printer 17 Infoprint 12 Infoprint 20 Infoprint 21 Infoprint 32 Infoprint 40 | Infoprint 4000 Infoprint 3000 Infoprint 60 Infoprint 62 Infoprint 70 Infoprint Color 130 Plus |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| X'1F' — Australia Postal Bar Code | X'01' through X'08' | no | Infoprint 20 | Infoprint 70 |

Data Streams

The following table shows which platforms have the ability to convert data streams from one format to another. This allows output which otherwise would not be printable on a particular device to be converted into a data stream that the printer understands.

Keep in mind when using data stream transforms that some loss of fidelity may occur. Also, performance and storage considerations should be taken into account because often the transformed data stream will consist entirely of image, which is larger than the originating file.

Note: Transforms that are functionally the same may not be identical from platform.

Table 16. Data Stream Transforms

| Transform | Infoprint Manager for AIX (V3R2) | Infoprint Manager for NT (V1R1) | AS/400 Host Print Transform (V4R4) | Infoprint Server Transforms (OS/390 V2R8) ¹ |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| AFP to PCL | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| AFP to PostScript | yes | yes | no | yes |
| AFP to PDF | yes | yes | no | yes |
| PCL to AFP | yes | no | no | yes |
| PostScript to AFP | yes | yes | no | yes |
| PDF to AFP | yes | yes | no | yes |
| SAP to AFP | yes | no | yes | yes |
| TIFF to AFP | yes | yes | yes | no |
| AFP to TIFF | no | no | yes | no |
| SCS to PCL | no | no | yes | no |
| Line data to AFP | yes | yes | no | yes |

1. Requires Infoprint Server for OS/390

Attachment Modes for Supported Printers

The following tables represent the datastream capabilities by attachment type currently available for the Printing Systems product line. These capabilities are enhanced on a regular basis, so it is recommended that you refer to current documentation when considering new printers and attachments. Additional servers, software products, and datastream transforms will also supplement these tables with other connectivity options. Many printers also support drivers available under other platforms (not listed in these tables) such as OS/2, MacOS, Solaris, SCO-UNIX, HP-UX, Novell NetWare, Netware, and Linux. Some of the attachment modes on various platforms will require additional software. For example, driving IPDS printers from any platform requires PSF or Infoprint Manager, and driving PCL or PostScript from OS/390 requires Infoprint Server. Please reference the IBM website at <http://www.ibm.com/printers> for specific software product requirements and up-to-date attachment information.

Attachment Modes for Workgroup Laser Printers

Table 17. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint Color 8

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|-----------------|----|-----|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | PostScript, PCL | | | PostScript, PCL | PostScript, PCL | PostScript, PCL |
| PC Parallel | | | | PostScript, PCL | PostScript, PCL | PostScript, PCL |

Table 18. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 12 Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|-----------------|----|-----|-----------------|-----|-----------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | PostScript, PCL | | | PostScript, PCL | | PostScript, PCL |
| PC Serial | | | | | | PostScript, PCL |
| PC Parallel | | | | PostScript, PCL | | PostScript, PCL |

Table 19. Attachment Modes for the Network Printer 12, Network Printer 17, Infoprint 20, Infoprint 32, and Infoprint 40 Printers

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | IPDS, PostScript, PCL | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS, PostScript, PCL, Pages* | PostScript, IPDS, PCL | PostScript, IPDS, PCL |
| PC Parallel | | | | PostScript, PCL | PCL, Pages*, PostScript, ESC/P* | PCL, Pages*, PostScript, ESC/P* |
| Coaxial | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE | | | |
| Twin-axial | | | | IPDS, SCS | | |

* Pages and ESC/P support is available only in Japan.

Table 20. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 21 Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | IPDS, PostScript, PCL | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS, PostScript, PCL | IPDS, PCL, PostScript | IPDS, PCL, PostScript |
| PC Parallel | | | | PostScript, PCL | PCL, PostScript | PCL, PostScript |
| Coaxial | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE | IPDS, SCS, DSC, DSE | | | |
| Twin-axial | | | | IPDS, SCS | | |

* Pages and ESC/P support is available only in Japan.

Attachment Modes for Cut Sheet Production Printers

Table 21. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 60 Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|-----------|------|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | IPDS, PCL | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS, PCL | IPDS, PCL | IPDS, PCL |
| Parallel Channel | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | | | |

Table 22. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 70 Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|--------|----|-----|--------|------|---------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | IPDS | | | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS |
| Parallel Channel | IPDS | | | | | |

Table 23. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 2000–NP1 and Infoprint 2000–RP1 Printers

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|----------------------|----|-----|-----------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | PostScript, PCL, PDF | | | PostScript, PCL | PostScript, PCL, PDF, KDKIMAGE | PostScript, PCL, PDF |

Table 24. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------|----|-----|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | PostScript, PCL, Xerox, DJDE, Metacode, PDF | | | PostScript, PCL | PostScript, PCL Xerox, DJDE, Metacode, PDF, KDKimage | PostScript, PCL Xerox, DJDE, Metacode, PDF |
| Parallel Channel | PostScript, PCL, Xerox, DJDE, Metacode, PDF | | | | | |

Table 25. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer with AFCCU Feature

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|--------|----|-----|--------|------|---------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | IPDS | | | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS |
| Parallel Channel | IPDS | | | | | |
| ESCON | IPDS | | | | | |
| FDDI | | | | | IPDS | |

Attachment Modes for Coninuous Form Production Printers

Table 26. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 3000 Printers

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|--------|----|------|--------|------|---------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | IPDS | | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS |

Table 26. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 3000 Printers (continued)

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------|--------|------|------|--------|------|---------|
| Parallel Channel | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | | | |
| ESCON | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | | | |
| FDDI | | | | | IPDS | |

Table 27. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 4000 Printers

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|--------|------|------|--------|------|---------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | IPDS | | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS |
| Parallel Channel | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | | | |
| ESCON | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | | | |
| FDDI | | | | | IPDS | |

Attachment Modes for Enterprise Color Printers

Table 28. Attachment Modes for the InfoColor 70, Infoprint Color 100, and Infoprint Color 130 Printers

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|--------|----|-----|------------|------------|------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | | | | PostScript | PostScript | PostScript |

Table 29. Attachment Modes Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|--------|----|-----|--------|------|---------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | IPDS | | | | IPDS | |
| FICON | IPDS | | | | | |

Attachment Mode for Industrial/Impact and Non-Impact Printers

Table 30. Attachment Modes for the 4230 Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS |
| PC Serial | | | | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII |
| PC Parallel | | | | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII |
| Coaxial | SCS, IPDS, DSC, DSE | SCS, IPDS, DSC, DSE | SCS, IPDS, DSC, DSE | | | |
| Twin-axial | | | | SCS, IPDS | | |

Table 31. Attachment Modes for the 4232 Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII |
| PC Serial | | | | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII |
| PC Parallel | | | | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII |

Table 32. Attachment Modes for the 4247 Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII |
| PC Serial | | | | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII |
| PC Parallel | | | | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII | PPDS, Epson, ASCII |
| Coaxial | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS, DSC, DSE | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS, DSC, DSE | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS, DSC, DSE | | | |
| Twin-axial | | | | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS | | |

Table 33. Attachment Modes for the 4400 Thermal Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | | ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP |
| PC Parallel | | | | ASCII, CodeV, IGP | ASCII, CodeV, IGP | ASCII, CodeV, IGP |
| Coaxial | ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | ASCII, CodeV, IGP | ASCII, CodeV, IGP | | | |
| Twin-axial | | | | ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | | |

Table 34. Attachment Modes for the 6400 Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS, CodeV, IGP |
| PC Parallel | | | | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, CodeV, IGP | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, CodeV, IGP | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, CodeV, IGP |
| Coaxial | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | | | |

Table 34. Attachment Modes for the 6400 Printer (continued)

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------|---------------|-----------|------------|-------------------------------------------|------------|----------------|
| Twin-axial | | | | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS, CodeV, IGP | | |

Table 35. Attachment Modes for the Infoprint 62 Printer

| | OS/390 | VM | VSE | AS/400 | AIX | Windows |
|------------------------|---------------|-----------|------------|---------------|------------|----------------|
| Ethernet or Token Ring | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS |
| Parallel Channel | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | | | |
| ESCON | IPDS | IPDS | IPDS | | | |

Chapter 2. Network Printer 12 (4312)

The Network Printer 12 is a desktop, cut-sheet printer that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes.



Figure 1. Network Printer 12 Printer

Table 36 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Network Printer 12.

Table 36. Network Printer 12 Characteristics

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 12 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams *Pages and ESC/P support is available only in Japan. | IPDS, SCS, DSC, Adobe PostScript Level 2, PCL-5e, Pages*, and ESC/P* |
| Form type | Cut Sheet |
| Input bins | Standard: Primary tray up to 250 sheets; auxiliary tray up to 80 sheets or 10 envelopes Optional: Secondary tray up to 500 sheets; optional envelope tray up to 50 envelopes |
| Output bins | Standard: Top output 250 sheets (face down, collated) Optional: Rear output tray 80 sheets (face up, uncollated) |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | yes |

Table 36. Network Printer 12 Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Envelope printing | yes |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for this printer. | no* |
| Duplex printing | yes (automatic duplex printing is optional) |
| Color | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | 35,000 |

Printable Area

The Network Printer 12 can print from edge-to-edge; however, print quality is only guaranteed to within 4 mm of all paper edges. For card stock and envelopes, the print quality is guaranteed only within 6 mm of the leading edge. For best possible print quality, edge-to-edge printing is not recommended. Figure 2 shows an example of the printable area.

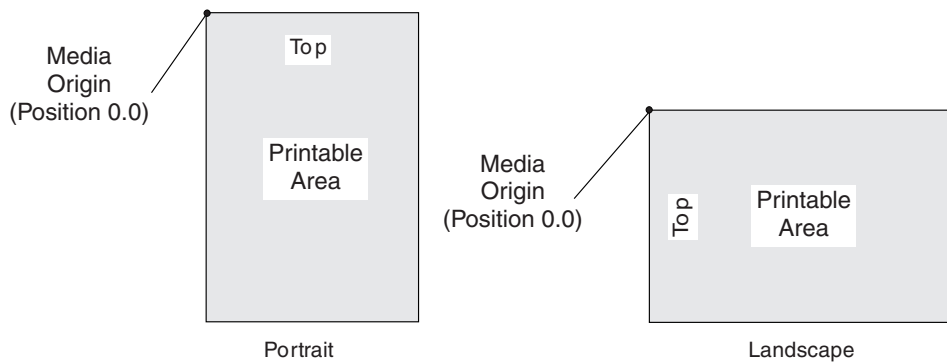


Figure 2. Printable Area on the Network Printer 12

Media Specifications

The Network Printer 12 accepts the following media:

Media types:

Paper, card stock, labels, transparencies, recycled paper and envelopes

Sheet sizes:

A6 (4.1 inches x 5.8 inches) to legal (8.5 inches x 14 inches)

Envelope sizes:

Com-10, C5, DL and Monarch

Media weights:

16 to 117 lbs. (60 to 190 g/m²)

Attachments

PC Parallel and RS-232 Serial Interface:

Table 37. PC Parallel and RS-232 Serial Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|-------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PC Parallel | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Windows 3.1, 3.11, 95 NT 3.51/4.0 Windows for Workgroups 3.11 AIX 3.2.5, 4.1 |
| PC Serial | AFPDS, SCS to PCL5e | OS/400(R) 3.2 HPT Facility |

Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet:

Table 38. Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|-----------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IPX/SPX | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Novell NetWare 2.15, 2.2, 3.0, 3.1, 3.11, 3.12, 4.0, 4.01, 4.1 (NEST 1.0) |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Novell NetWare 3.11, 3.12, 4.0, 4.01, 4.1 IBM LAN Server 2.0 and above Windows NT 3.51/4.0 AIX 3.2.5, 4.1 |
| TCP/IP | IPDS | Infoprint Manager PSF/MVS 2.2 PSF for OS/390 PSF/400 3.1, 3.6, 3.2 |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e | OS/400 3.1 and later |
| NETBIOS/NETBEUI | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | IBM LAN Server 1.3 and above Microsoft LAN Manager 2.0 and above |
| TokenTalk | PostScript 2 | Apple System 7 |
| EtherTalk | PostScript 2 | Apple System 7 |

Optional Coax Interface:

Table 39. Optional Coax Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/MVS 2.2, PSF for OS/390 |
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/VSE 2.2.1 |
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/VM 2.1.1, 2.1.0 + maintenance |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | Infoprint Server |
| NDS | IPDS | GDDM 2.3 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | GDDM 2.3 |
| NDS | IPDS | VM RSCS 2.2 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | VM RSCS 2.2 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | JES328X 2.0 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | VTAM |

Table 39. Optional Coax Interface (continued)

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|-------------|------------------|
| NDS | SCS | CICS/MVS |
| NDS | SCS | CICS/VSE |

Optional Twinax Interface:

Table 40. Optional Twinax Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|-------------|----------------------------------|
| Arctic | IPDS | PSF/400 3.1, 3.6, 3.2 |
| Arctic | IPDS | OS/400 3.6, 3.1, 3.0.5, 2.3, 2.2 |
| Arctic | IPDS | OS/400 3.2 |
| Arctic | SCS | OS/400 3.6, 3.1, 3.0.5, 2.3, 2.2 |
| Arctic | SCS | OS/400 3.2 |
| Arctic | SCS, IPDS | SSP Rel. 7.1 |
| Arctic | SCS, IPDS | OS/400 3.6 with SSP Rel. 7.5 |

Chapter 3. Network Printer 17 (4317)

This section describes the Network Printer 17 printer characteristics and PSF-supported functions. The Network Printer 17 is a desktop, cut-sheet printer that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes.



Figure 3. Network Printer 17 Printer

Table 41 summarizes the printer characteristics and PSF-supported functions for the Network Printer 17 printers.

Table 41. Network Printer 17 Characteristics

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 17 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams * Pages and ESC/P support is available only in Japan. | IPDS, SCS, DSC, Adobe PostScript Level 2, PCL-5e, Pages*, and ESC/P* |
| Form type | Cut Sheet |

Table 41. Network Printer 17 Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of input bins | Standard: Primary tray up to 250 sheets; auxiliary tray up to 100 sheets or 10 envelopes Optional: 2 secondary trays up to 500 sheets each (total 1000); envelope tray up to 75 envelopes |
| Number of output bins | Standard: Top output 250 sheets (face down, collated) Optional: Offset jogger up to 500 sheets; 10 bin secure mailbox up to 450 sheets |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | yes |
| Envelope printing | yes |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for this printer. | no* |
| Duplex printing | yes (automatic duplex printing is optional) |
| Color | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | 65,000 |

Printable Area

can print from edge-to-edge; however, print quality is only guaranteed to within 4 mm of all paper edges. For card stock and envelopes, the print quality is guaranteed only within 6 mm of the leading edge. For best possible print quality, edge-to-edge printing is not recommended. Figure 4 shows an example of the printable area of a form.

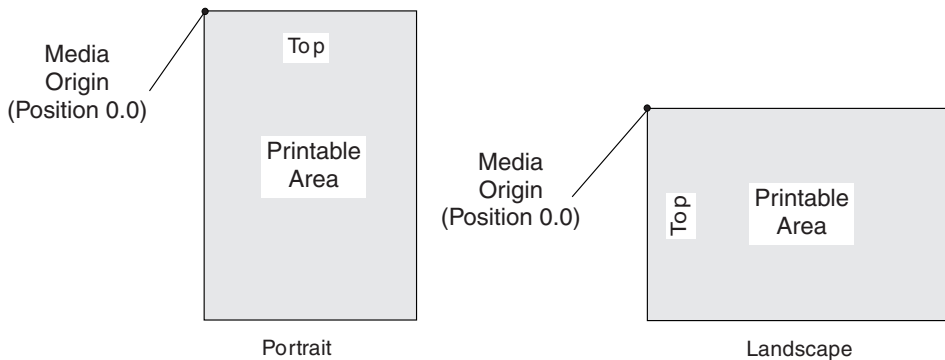


Figure 4. Printable Area on the Network Printer 17

Media Specifications

The Network Printer 17 accepts the following media:

Media types:

Paper, card stock, labels, transparencies, recycled paper and envelopes

Sheet sizes:

A6 (4.1 inches x 5.8 inches) to legal (8.5 inches x 14 inches)

Envelope sizes:

Com-10, C5, DL and Monarch

Media weights:16 to 117 lbs. (60 to 190 g/m²)

Attachments

PC Parallel and RS-232 Serial Interface:

Table 42. PC Parallel and RS-232 Serial Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|-------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PC Parallel | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Windows 3.1, 3.11, 95 NT 3.51/4.0 Windows for Workgroups 3.11 AIX 3.2.5, 4.1 |
| PC Serial | AFPDS, SCS to PCL5e | OS/400(R) 3.2 HPT Facility |

Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet:

Table 43. Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|-----------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IPX/SPX | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Novell NetWare 2.15, 2.2, 3.0, 3.1, 3.11, 3.12, 4.0, 4.01, 4.1 (NEST 1.0) |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Novell NetWare 3.11, 3.12, 4.0, 4.01, 4.1 IBM LAN Server 2.0 and above Windows NT 3.51/4.0 AIX 3.2.5, 4.1 |
| TCP/IP | IPDS | PSF/MVS 2.2 PSF for OS/390 Infoprint Manager PSF/400 3.1, 3.6, 3.2 |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e | OS/400 3.1 and later |
| NETBIOS/NETBEUI | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Microsoft LAN Manager 2.0 and above IBM LAN Server 1.3 and above |
| TokenTalk | PostScript 2 | Apple System 7 |
| EtherTalk | PostScript 2 | Apple System 7 |

Optional Coax Interface:

Table 44. Optional Coax Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/MVS 2.2, PSF for OS/390 |
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/VSE 2.2.1 |
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/VM 2.1.1, 2.1.0 + maintenance |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | Infoprint Server |
| NDS | IPDS | GDDM 2.3 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | GDDM 2.3 |

Table 44. Optional Coax Interface (continued)

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|---------------|------------------|
| NDS | IPDS | VM RSCS 2.2 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | VM RSCS 2.2 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | JES328X 2.0 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | VTAM |
| NDS | SCS | CICS/MVS |
| NDS | SCS | CICS/VSE |

Optional Twinax Interface:

Table 45. Optional Twinax Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|-------------|----------------------------------|
| Arctic | IPDS | PSF/400 3.1, 3.6, 3.2 |
| Arctic | IPDS | OS/400 3.6, 3.1, 3.0.5, 2.3, 2.2 |
| Arctic | IPDS | OS/400 3.2 |
| Arctic | SCS | OS/400 3.6, 3.1, 3.0.5, 2.3, 2.2 |
| Arctic | SCS | OS/400 3.2 |
| Arctic | SCS, IPDS | SSP Rel. 7.1 |
| Arctic | SCS, IPDS | OS/400 3.6 with SSP Rel. 7.5 |

Chapter 4. Infoprint Color 8 Printer (4308)

The Infoprint Color 8 printer is a high-quality desktop, cut-sheet color printer that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes in 600 dpi color and monochrome.



Figure 5. Infoprint Color 8 Printer

Table 46 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint Color 8 printer.

Table 46. Infoprint Color 8 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 8 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams | PCL and PostScript |
| Form type | Cut Sheet |
| Number of input bins | Standard: Primary tray up to 500 sheets; Manual Feed Input up to 100 sheets |
| | Optional: Secondary tray up to 500 sheets |

Table 46. Infoprint Color 8 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of output bins | Standard: Document stacker up to 250 sheets, face-down stacking; Special Media Stacker up to 100 sheets for special printing, face-up stacking |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | yes |
| Envelope printing | no |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for this printer. | no* |
| Duplex printing | yes (manual) |
| Color | yes |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | 25,000 |

Printable Area

The Infoprint Color 8 can print from edge-to-edge; however, print quality is only guaranteed to within 4 mm of all paper edges. For card stock and envelopes, the print quality is guaranteed only within 6 mm of the leading edge. For best possible print quality, edge-to-edge printing is not recommended. Figure 6 shows an example of the printable area of a page.

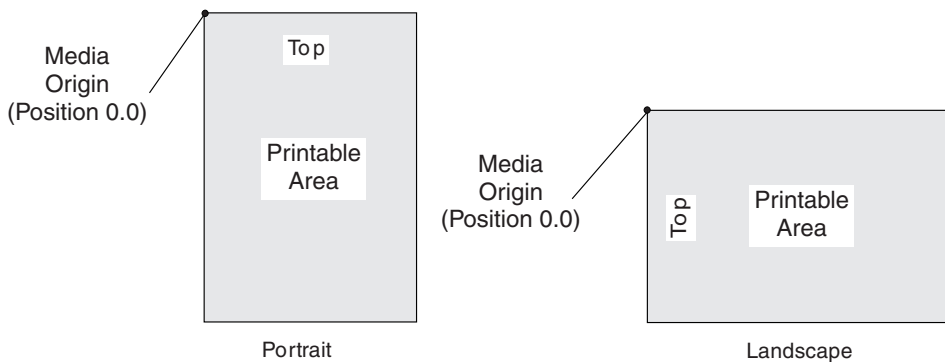


Figure 6. Printable Area on the Infoprint Color 8 printer

Selecting the Printing Medium

The Infoprint Color 8 printer are cut-sheet printers with several media sources, depending on the model and options selected.

To select the printing medium, use the **Device Settings** tab of the **Properties** menu of your printer driver.

Media Size and Configuration

The media loaded for your printer must match the media size in the printer configuration. If these sizes do not match, a printer error code indicates that this mismatch must be corrected by either changing the media at the printer or by changing the configuration to match the media.

Media Specifications

The Infoprint Color 8 accepts the following media:

Media types:

High-quality electrophotographic copier/printer paper; labels, transparencies, and card stock designed for laser printers

Sheet sizes:

- A6 (105 x 148 mm) to A4 (210 x 297 mm)
- Letter (8.5 inches x 11 inches) to Legal 14 (8.5 inches x 14. inches)
- Custom sizes: 3.5" - 8.5 inches x 5.5 inches - 14 inches (86.4 mm - 216 mm x 140 mm - 355.6 mm) from Manual Feed Input only

Media weights:

- 17 to 28 lbs. (64 to 105 g/m²) standard and optional trays
- 20 to 44 lbs. (75 to 165 g/m²) manual feed input

Attachments

Infoprint Color 8 printer supports the following:

Drivers:

Table 47. Supported Drivers on the Infoprint Color 8 Printer

| Driver Name | Operating System Supported |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Windows for PCL 5c | Windows 3.x/95/98 (models 001, 002) Windows 95/98 (model 003) |
| Windows NT for PCL 5c | Windows NT 4.0 ¹ |
| Windows for PostScript 2/3 | Windows 3.x/95/98 with Heidelberg color management (models 001, 002) Windows 95/98 (model 003) |
| Windows NT for PostScript 2/3 | Windows NT 4.0 ¹ with Heidelberg color management (models 001, 002) Windows NT 4.0 ¹ (model 003) |
| OS/2 PostScript 2 | OS/2 2.11, Warp (models 001, 002) |
| AIX PCL 5c and PostScript 2/3 | AIX 4.1 and higher |
| Macintosh PostScript 2/3 | MacOS 7.5 and higher |
| Sun Solaris PCL 5c and PostScript 2/3 | Solaris 2.5 and higher |
| SCO-UNIX PCL 5c and PostScript 2/3 | SCO-UNIX OPENDESKTOP 3, SCO-UNIX OPENSERVER 5, SCO UNIX 3.2V4.2 |
| HP-UX PCL 5c and PostScript 2 | HP-UX 10.x and higher |
| 1. Follow-ons to Windows NT 4.0 will be supported. | |

Network Operating Systems

Table 48. Supported Network Operating Systems on the Infoprint Color 8 Printer. Description

| Protocol | Datastream | Operating System |
|----------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| IPX/SPX | PostScript, PCL 5c | Novell NetWare 3.11, 3.12, 4.0, 4.01, 4.1, 5 ¹ |
| TCP/IP | PostScript, PCL 5c | NetWare 3.12 and 4.11 OS/2 2.11, Warp |
| IPX/SPX | PostScript, PCL 5c | NetWare 3.12 and 4.11 |

Table 48. Supported Network Operating Systems on the Infoprint Color 8 Printer (continued). Description

| Protocol | Datastream | Operating System |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| DLC | PostScript, PCL 5c | Windows 95/98, Windows NT 4.0 (models 001/002) |
| NETBEUI | PostScript, PCL 5c | Windows 95/98, Windows NT 4.0 (model 003) |
| TCP/IP | PostScript, PCL 5c | Windows NT 4.0 |
| LPR/LPD | PostScript, PCL 5c | AIX 4.1 and higher Solaris 2.5 and higher SCO UNIX 2.5 and higher HP-UX 10.x and higher |
| 1. Novell genuine NDPS gateway supported. | | |

AS/400

Infoprint Color 8 is supported as a Workstation Customization Object under the Host Print Transform (HPT) facility of OS/400 V3.2. HPT transforms the AFPDS or SCS data stream to ASCII for printing to AS/400 ASCII emulator products with a parallel attached printer including:

- PC or PS/2 running the IBM enhanced 5250 emulation program
- PC or PS/2 running PC Support/400 or Client Access/400
- Infowindow II displays (3477/3487)

The ASCII data stream can also be sent to this printer when attached directly to a Token-Ring or Ethernet LAN via the OS/400 TCP/IP Line Printer Requester (LPR) and Line Printer Daemon (LPD).

IBM Infoprint Manager

The Infoprint Color 8 printer is supported under IBM's Infoprint Manager through PCL 5c print transform.

Chapter 5. Infoprint 12 Printer (4912)

The Infoprint 12 is a desktop, cut-sheet printer that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes.



Figure 7. Infoprint 12 Printer

Table 49 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 12.

Table 49. Infoprint 12 Characteristics

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 12 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams | PostScript 3 and PCL 6 |
| Form type | Cut Sheet |
| Number of input bins | Standard: Primary tray up to 250 sheets; auxiliary tray up to 100 sheets Optional tray up to 550 sheets or 40 envelopes |
| Number of output bins | Standard: Main bin up to 250 sheets; rear exit tray up to 100 sheets |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |

Table 49. Infoprint 12 Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Manual forms feed | yes |
| Envelope printing | yes |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for this printer. | no* |
| Duplex printing | yes (manual duplex printing is standard) |
| Color | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 300 dots-per-inch 600 dots-per-inch 1,200 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | 20,000 |

Printable Area

The printable area is up to 0.157 inch (4 mm) from the edge (top, bottom, left, and right) for a sheet of paper and 0.394 inch (10 mm) from the edge (top, bottom, left, and right) for envelopes.

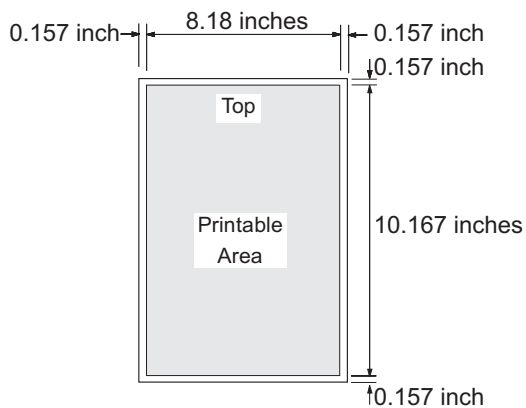


Figure 8. Printable Area on the Infoprint 12

Media Size and Configuration

The media loaded for your printer must match the media size in the printer configuration. If these sizes do not match, a printer error code indicates that this mismatch must be corrected by either changing the media at the printer or by changing the configuration to match the media.

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 12 accepts the following media:

Media types:

Paper, card stock, labels, transparencies, recycled paper and envelopes

Sheet sizes:

A6 (4.1 inches x 5.8 inches) to legal (8.5 inches x 14 inches), Custom forms sizes from 3 inches x 5.8 inches (76.2 mm x 127 mm) to 8.5 inches x 14 inches (215.9 mm x 355.6 mm) to 105 gsm

Envelope sizes:

Com-10, C5, DL and Monarch

Media weights:

- Copier/xerographic papers: 16 to 28 lbs. (60 to 105 gsm)
- Cardstock: 16 to 43 lbs. (60 to 163 gsm)
- Envelopes: 16 to 28 lbs. (60 to 105 gsm)

Attachments

Printer Attachment Interfaces

Infoprint 12 has the following attachment interfaces as standard:

- IEEE 1284 Parallel Interface (level I electronics with a Type B connector).
- USB (Version 1.0/1.1)

Infoprint 12 supports port switching between the parallel, USB, and optional Fast Ethernet ports.

Attachments/Operating System Support

Table 50. Attachment and Operating System Support for the Infoprint 12 Printer

| Physical | Protocol | Operating Systems |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Parallel (IEEE 1284) | | Windows 95/98/Millennium, NT 4.0, Windows 2000 Macintosh OS 8.5 and higher |
| USB | | Windows 98/Millennium, NT 4.0, Windows 2000 Macintosh OS 8.5 and higher |
| LAN (IEEE 802.3) | IPX/SPX TCP/IP | Novell NetWare 3.x, 4.x, 5.x Windows 95/98/Millennium, NT 4.0, Windows 2000 Novell NetWare 5.x Linux (Red Hat) |
| | NETBIOS/NETBEUI | Windows 95/98 |
| IEEE 802.3 | AppleTalk | Macintosh OS 8.5 and higher |

Chapter 6. Infoprint 20 Printer (4320)

This section describes the Infoprint 20 printer characteristics and PSF-supported functions. The Infoprint 20 printer is a desktop, cut-sheet printer that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes.



Figure 9. Infoprint 20 Printer

Table 51 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 20 printer.

Table 51. Infoprint 20 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 20 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams * Pages and ESC/P support is available only in Japan. | IPDS, SCS, DSC, PostScript, PCL, Pages*, and ESC/P |
| Form type | Cut Sheet |
| Number of input bins | Standard: Primary tray up to 500 sheets; secondary tray up to 150 sheets or 10 envelopes Optional: drawer up to 500 sheets; high-capacity drawer up to 2,000 sheets; envelope feeder up to 75 envelopes |

Table 51. Infoprint 20 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of output bins | Standard: Top output 500 sheets (face down, collated); Optional duplex provides two-sided printing, offset-jagged output and additional 250 sheets output capacity (750 total) |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | yes |
| Envelope printing | yes |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for this printer. | no* |
| Duplex printing | yes |
| Color | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | 75,000 |

Printable Area

The Infoprint 20 printer can print from edge-to-edge. For paper ledger size (11 x 17 in.) and smaller, print quality is guaranteed to only within 4 mm of the border. For paper larger than ledger size, print quality is guaranteed only within 4 mm of the short (leading or trailing edge) borders and within 5 mm on each side. For best print quality, edge-to-edge printing is not recommended. Figure 10 shows an example of the printable area of a form.

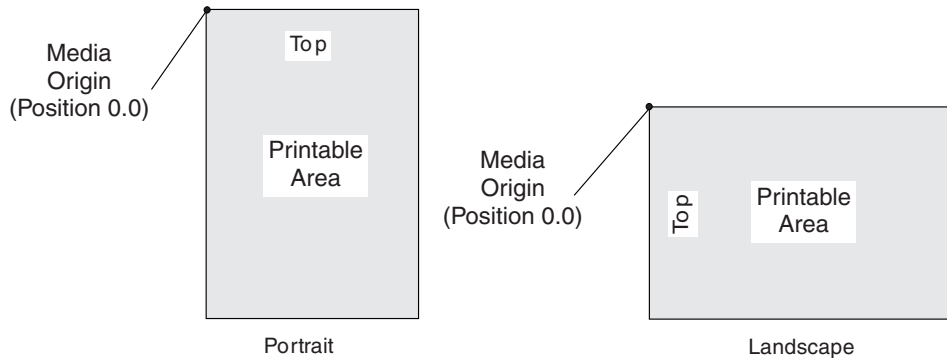


Figure 10. Printable Area on the Infoprint 20 Printer

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 20 printer accepts the following media:

Media types:

Copier/xerographic paper, recycled paper, card stock, transparencies, some labels

Sheet sizes:

B5 (182 x 257 mm) to A3/ledger (11" x 17"), universal paper sizes (up to 13" x 20", 330 x 508 mm)

Envelope sizes:

Com-10, C5, DL and Monarch

Paper weights:16 to 28 lbs. (64 to 135 g/m²)

Attachments

PC Parallel Interface:

Table 52. PC Parallel Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|-------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PC Parallel | PCL5e | Windows 3.1/3.11/95, NT 4.0, OS/2, AIX 3.2.5, AIX 4.1 and higher, Sun Solaris 2.3 and higher, HP-UX 9, HP-UX 10, SCO UNIX 3, SCO UNIX 5 |
| PC Parallel | PostScript 2/3 | Windows 3.1/3.11/95, NT 4.0 (2), AIX 3.2.5, AIX 4.1 and higher, Sun Solaris 2.3 and higher, HP-UX 9, HP-UX 10, SCO UNIX 3, and SCO UNIX 5 |
| PC Parallel | PostScript 2/3 | Windows 95 J, Windows NT J4.0 |
| PC Parallel | PCL5e | P-Windows 3.2, T-Windows 3.1, Windows 95 (S-C), Windows 95 (T-C), Windows NT 4.0 (S-C), Windows NT 4.0 (T-C) |
| PC Parallel | AFPDS, SCS to PCL5e | OS/400(R) 3.2 HPT Facility |
| PC Parallel | PAGES and ESC/P | Windows 3.1/95J, NT 3.51/4.0, AIX 3.2.5, AIX 4.1 and higher, and PC-DOS J6.3/V and above |

Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet:

Table 53. Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IPX/SPX | PCL5e, PostScript | Novell NetWare 2.15, 2.2, 3.0, 3.1, 3.11, 3.12, 4.0, 4.01, 4.1 (NEST 1.0) |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Novell NetWare 3.11, 3.12, 4.0, 4.01, 4.1 |
| TCP/IP | PostScript | NetWare J 3.12J and 4.11J |
| IPX/SPX | PostScript | NetWare J 3.12J and 4.11J |
| NETBIOS/NETBEUI | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | IBM LAN Server 1.3 and above |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | IBM LAN Server 2.0 and above |
| NETBIOS/NETBEUI | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Microsoft LAN Manager 2.0 and above |
| TCP/IP | IPDS | PSF for AIX 2.1, Infoprint Manager |
| TCP/IP | IPDS | PSF/MVS 2.2, PSF for OS/390 |
| TCP/IP | IPDS | PSF/400 3.1, 3.2, 3.6, 3.7, 4.1 |
| IEEE 802.3 | IPDS | PSF for AIX 2.1, Infoprint Manager |
| IEEE 802.3 | IPDS | PSF/MVS 2.2, PSF for OS/390 |

Table 53. Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet (continued)

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| IEEE 802.3 | IPDS | PSF/400 3.1, 3.2, 3.6, 3.7, 4.1 |
| TokenTalk | PostScript 2 | Apple System 7 |
| EtherTalk | PostScript 2 | Apple System 7 |
| TokenTalk | PostScript 2 | KajiTalk 7.5/7.6, MAC OS 8.0 |
| EtherTalk | PostScript 2 | KajiTalk 7.5/7.6, MAC OS 8.0 |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Windows NT 3.51/4.0 |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | AIX 3.2.5, 4.1, 4.2 and later |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | OS/400 3.1 and later |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Sun Solaris 2.3 and higher |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | SCO-UNIX 3, SCO-UNIX 5 |
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | HP-UX 9, HP-UX 10 |

Optional Coax Interface:

Table 54. Optional Coax Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/MVS 2.2, PSF for OS/390 |
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/VSE 2.2.1 |
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/VM 2.1.1, 2.1.0 + maintenance |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | Infoprint Server |
| NDS | IPDS | GDDM 2.3 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | GDDM 2.3 |
| NDS | IPDS | VM RSCS 2.2 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | VM RSCS 2.2 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | JES328X 2.0 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | VTAM |
| NDS | SCS | CICS/MVS |
| NDS | SCS | CICS/VSE |

Optional Twinax Interface:

Table 55. Optional Twinax Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Arctic | IPDS | PSF/400 3.1, 3.6, 3.2, 3.7, 4.1 |
| Arctic | IPDS | OS/400 3.6, 3.1, 3.0.5 |
| Arctic | IPDS | OS/400 3.2 |
| Arctic | SCS | OS/400 3.6, 3.1, 3.0.5 |
| Arctic | SCS | OS/400 3.2 |
| Arctic | SCS, IPDS | SSP Rel. 7.1 |
| Arctic | SCS, IPDS | OS/400 3.6 with SSP Rel. 7.5 |

Chapter 7. Infoprint 21 Printer (4322)

This section describes the Infoprint 21 printer characteristics and PSF-supported functions. The Infoprint 21 printer is a desktop, cut-sheet printer that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes.



Figure 11. Infoprint 21 Printer

Table 56 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 21 printer.

Table 56. Infoprint 21 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 21 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams | IPDS, SCS, DSC, PostScript, and PCL |
| Form type | Cut Sheet |
| Number of input bins | Standard: Primary tray up to 550 sheets or 85 envelopes; auxiliary tray up to 100 sheets or 10 envelopes |
| | Optional: Up to two additional 550-sheet trays (maximum 5 input sources ¹ and 1,750 sheets) |
| Number of output bins | Standard: 500-sheet top exit bin with bin full sensing |
| | Optional: 500-sheet offset jogging stacker; 100-sheet face-up rear paper exit tray |

Table 56. Infoprint 21 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | yes |
| Envelope printing | yes |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for this printer. | no* |
| Duplex printing | yes |
| Color | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 1200 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | 100,000 |
| 1. The 5th input source includes the 75-envelope feeder. | |

Printable Area

The Infoprint 21 printer can print from edge-to-edge; however, print quality is only guaranteed to within 4 mm of all paper edges. For card stock and envelopes, the print quality is guaranteed only within 6 mm of the leading edge. For best possible print quality, edge-to-edge printing is not recommended. Figure 12 shows an example of the printable area of a form.

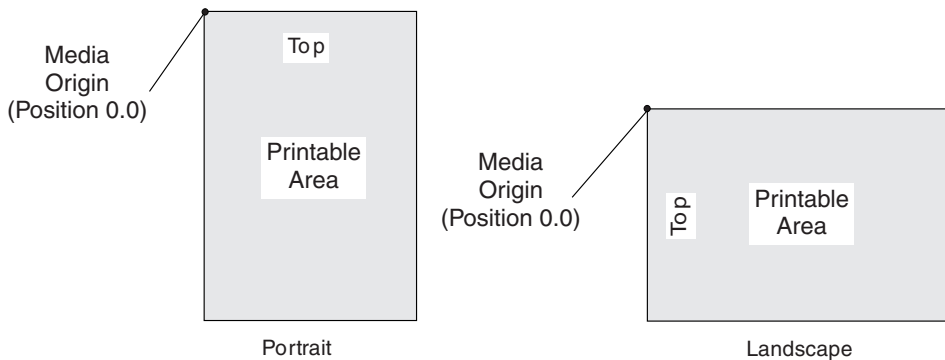


Figure 12. Printable Area on the Infoprint 21 Printer

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 21 printer accepts the following media:

Media types:

Paper, card stock, labels, transparencies, recycled paper and envelopes

Sheet sizes:

Letter (8.5 inches x 11 inches), Legal (8.5 inches x 14 inches), Folio (8.5 inches x 13 inches), Executive (7.25 inches x 10.5 inches), Statement (5.5 inches x 8.5 inches), Index card (3 inches x 5 inches), A4 (210 mm x 297 mm), A5 (148 mm x 210 mm), B5-ISO (176 mm x 250 mm), B5-JIS (182 mm x 257 mm), Japanese postcard Hagaki (100 mm x 148 mm), custom forms sizes from 3 inches x 5 inches (76.2 mm x 127 mm) to 8.5 inches x 14 inches (215.9 mm x 355.6 mm)

Envelope sizes:

Com-10, C5, DL and Monarch

Media weights:

- Copier/xerographic papers: 16 to 28 lbs. (60 to 105 gsm)
- Cardstock: 16 to 133 lbs. (60 to 216 gsm)
- Labels: 60 to 216 gsm
- Envelopes: 16 to 28 lbs. (60 to 105 gsm)
- Transparencies: 0.0039 inches to 0.0045 inches clear film for laser printers and copiers

Attachments

Infoprint 21 supports up to two simultaneously active interfaces:

- IEEE 1284 Parallel Interface (Level II electronics, with a Type C connector) is standard on the printer
 - Supports compatibility mode, reverse transform, nibble mode, and ECP mode.
 - Microsoft Plug and Play Compatibility
 - An IEEE 1284 Printer Cable is available (feature number 4180, P/N 38L1409).
- One optional interface slot with the following options:
 - Ethernet interface using the IBM Ethernet 10/100 Adapter (feature number 4162, P/N 38L1401).
 - Token-Ring interface using the IBM Token-Ring 4/16 Adapter (feature number 4120, P/N 38L1400).
 - Twinax interface using the IBM Twinax SCS Interface (feature number 4141, P/N 38L1402).
 - Coaxial interface using the IBM Coax SCS Interface (feature number 4171, P/N 38L1403).

These four features are mutually exclusive and there are no prerequisites for these features. Only one of these features may be installed per printer.

Attachment/Operating System Support

Table 57. Attachment/Operating System Support for the Infoprint 21 Printer

| Physical | Protocol | Operating System |
|-------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Parallel (IEEE 1284) | Row1, Col2 | Windows 95/98, NT 4.0 Windows 2000 AIX 4.1 and higher OS/2 v3.0, v4.0 Sun Solaris 2.5 and higher HP-UX 10, HP-UX 11 SCO UNIX 3, SCO UNIX 5 OS/400 (R) 3.2 HPT Facility |
| LAN (IEEE 802.3/5) | IPX/SPX | Novell NetWare 3.1, 3.11, 3.12, 4.0, 4.01, 4.1, 4.11, 5.0, 3.12J, 4.11J |
| | TCP/IP | Novell NetWare 5.0 Windows 95/98, Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000 OS/2 v3.0, v4.0 AIX 4.03 and higher OS/400 3.2, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.4 Sun Solaris 2.5 and higher HP-UX 10, HP-UX 11 SCO-UNIX 3, SCO-UNIX 5 PSF for AIX 2.1 Infoprint Manager for AIX 3.1 Infoprint Manager for Windows NT & Windows 2000 1.1 PSF for OS/390 V3.1.0 PSF/400 3.2, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.4 Linux |
| | NETBIOS/NETBEUI | Windows 95/98, NT 4.0, OS/2 v3.0, v4.0 |

Table 57. Attachment/Operating System Support for the Infoprint 21 Printer (continued)

| Physical | Protocol | Operating System |
|------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| IEEE 802.3 | EtherTalk | Apple System 8.0 and higher KanjiTalk 8.0 and higher |
| IEEE 802.5 | TokenTalk | Apple System 8.0 and higher KanjiTalk 8.0 and higher |

Optional Coax Interface

Table 58. Optional Coax Interface for the Infoprint 21 Printer

| Data Stream | Operating System |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AFP/IPDS | PSF/MVS 3.1 PSF/MVS 2.2 PSF for OS/390 PSF/VSE 2.2.1 PSF/VM 2.1.1, 2.1.0 + maintenance GDDM 2.3 |
| SCS, DSC, DSE | GDDM 2.3 VM RSCS 2.2 JES328X 2.0 VTAM |
| AFP/IPDS | VM RSCS 2.2 |
| SCS | CICS/MVS CICS/VSE |

Optional Twinax Interface

Table 59. Optional Twinax Interface for the Infoprint 21 Printer

| Data Stream | Operating System |
|---------------|------------------|
| AFP/IPDS | PSF/400 3.2 |
| SCS | OS/400 3.2 |
| SCS, AFP/IPDS | SSP Rel. 7.1 |

IBM OS/400 ASCII Printer Support

Infoprint 21 is supported as an ASCII (PCL) printer via a Workstation Customization Object under the Host Print Transform (HPT) facility of OS/400 V3.2 and higher.

HPT transforms the AFPDS or SCS data stream to ASCII for printing to AS/400 ASCII printers. ASCII printers can be attached using emulator products with a parallel attached printer including:

- PC or PS/2 running the IBM enhanced 5250 emulation program
- PC or PS/2 running PC Support/400 or Client Access/400
- Infowindow II displays (3477/3487)

The ASCII data stream can also be sent to this printer when attached directly to a Token-Ring or Ethernet LAN via TCP/IP. That connection can use either of the following two TCP/IP drivers:

- OS/400 SNMP printer driver.

Information APAR II03291 describes the PTFs required in V4R3 and V4R4 to use this driver. Availability of the PTFs are 06/30/2000 for V4R3 and 07/31/2000 for V4R4.

- OS/400 TCP/IP Line Printer Requester (LPR) and Line Printer Daemon (LPD), also known as remote output queue.

HPT support (AFP to ASCII) includes the following limitations:

- AFP graphics (GOCA) commands not supported
- Multiple-up not supported
- BGR and GDF graphics files not supported
- GDDM scalable fonts not supported
- CHRSIZE font keyword not supported
- Edge to edge not supported
- FIDELITY keyword not supported
- AFP to ASCII may need to be run in raster mode in order to produce accurate results.

Printer Drivers

The following drivers are available:

Table 60. Printer Drivers for the Infoprint 21 Printer

| Platform | Data Stream |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| Windows 95/98 | PS 3 |
| Windows NT 4.0 | PS 3 |
| Windows 2000 | PS 3 |
| Windows 95/98 | PCL 6/5e |
| Windows NT 4.0 | PCL 6/5e |
| Windows 2000 | PCL 6/5e |
| Mac OS 8.0+ | PS 3 |
| OS/2 v3.0, v4.0 | PS 2 |
| AIX 4.1+ | PS 3/PCL 5e |
| Sun Solaris 2.5+ | PS 3/PCL 5e |
| SCO UNIX 3.0/5.0 | PS 3/PCL 5e |
| HP-UX 10.0x/11.0x | PS 3/PCL 5e |
| Linux | PS 2 |

Chapter 8. Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 Printers (4332)

This section describes printer characteristics for the Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 printers. The Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 printers are desktop, cut-sheet printers that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes.



Figure 13. Infoprint 32 Printer



Figure 14. Infoprint 40 Printer with Optional Finisher

Table 61 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 printers.

Table 61. Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value Infoprint 32 Printer | Characteristic Value Infoprint 40 Printer |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 32 pages per minute | 40 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Laser | |
| Datastreams * Pages and ESC/P support is available only in Japan. | IPDS, SCS, DSC, PostScript, PCL, Pages*, and ESC/P | |
| Form type | Cut Sheet | |
| Number of input bins | Standard: 2 Primary trays up to 500 sheets each (1,000 total); auxiliary tray up to 50 sheets or 4 envelopes | |
| | Optional: 2,500 sheet, high-capacity input with 3 drawers (one 1500 up to sheets and 2 up to 1000 sheets); envelope feeder up to 100 envelopes | |
| Number of output bins | Standard: Top output up to 500 sheets (collated, with bin-full sensing and offset jogging) | |
| | Optional: 2,000-sheet finisher with 3 additional output bins, offset jogging and stapling (up to 50 sheets per set) and 200-sheet, face-up output tray | |
| Finisher Attachments | | |

Table 61. Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value Infoprint 32 Printer | Characteristic Value Infoprint 40 Printer |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Corner staple | | yes |
| Edge staple | | yes |
| Side Staple | | no |
| Saddle | | no |
| Z-Fold | | no |
| Inserter | | no |
| Manual forms feed | | yes |
| Envelope printing | | yes |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for this printer. | | no* |
| Duplex printing | | yes |
| Color | | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | | no |
| Printhead resolution | | 600 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | | 75,000 |

Printable Area

The Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 printers can print from edge-to-edge for all data streams except PAGES; however, print quality is only guaranteed to within 4 mm of all paper edges. For card stock and envelopes, the print quality is guaranteed only within 6 mm of the leading edge. For best possible print quality, edge-to-edge printing is not recommended. Figure 15 shows an example of the printable area of a form.

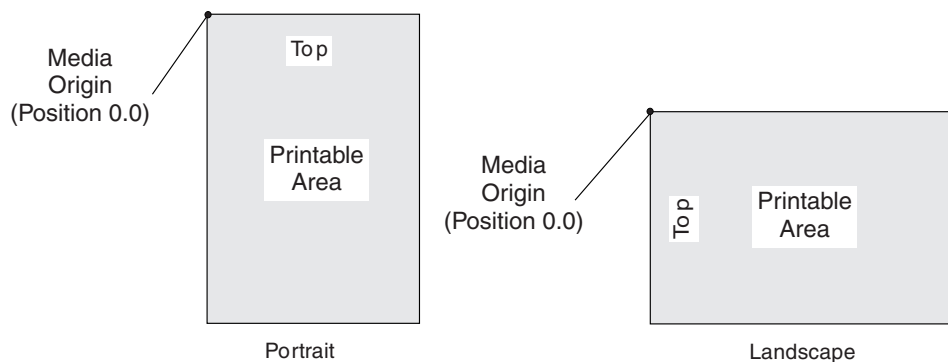


Figure 15. Printable Area on the Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 Printers

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 printers accept the following media:

Media types:

Copier/xerographic paper, recycled paper, card stock, transparencies, paper labels, prepunched paper, and envelopes

Sheet sizes:

A wide range from A5/statement (210 mm x 149 mm, 8.5 inches x 5.5 inches), including Japanese Hagaki (100 mm x 148 mm), to A3/ledger (420 mm x 297 mm, 11 inches x 17 inches)

Envelope sizes:

Com-10, C5, DL and Monarch

Media weights:

17 to 24 lbs (64 to 90 gsm) from primary trays and up to 110 lbs. (165 gsm) from auxiliary tray

Attachments

PC Parallel Interface:

Table 62. PC Parallel Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|-------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PC Parallel | PCL5e | Windows 3.1/3.11/95/98, NT 4.0, AIX 3.2.5, AIX 4.1 and higher, Sun Solaris 2.3 and higher, HP-UX 9.0x, HP-UX 10.0x, SCO UNIX OPENSERVER 5.0, SCO UNIX OPENDESKTOP 3.0, SCO UNIX 3.2V4.2 |
| PC Parallel | PostScript 2/3 | Windows 3.1/3.11/95/98, AIX 3.2.5, AIX 4.1 and higher, Sun Solaris 2.3 and higher, HP-UX 9.0x, HP-UX 10.0x, SCO UNIX OPENSERVER 5.0, SCO UNIX OPENDESKTOP 3.0, SCO UNIX 3.2V4.2 |
| PC Parallel | PostScript 2/3 | NT 4.0, Windows NT J4.0 |
| PC Parallel | PCL5e | P-Windows 3.2, T-Windows 3.1, Windows 95 (S-C), Windows 95 (T-C), Windows NT 4.0 (S-C), Windows NT 4.0 (T-C) |
| PC Parallel | AFPDS, SCS to PCL5e | OS/400(R) 3.2 HPT Facility |
| PC Parallel | PostScript 2/3 | Apple System 7.5 and Up |
| PC Parallel | PostScript 2/3 | Apple KanjiTalk 7.5 and Up |
| PC Parallel | PAGES and ESC/P | Windows 3.1/95J, NT 3.51/4.0, AIX 3.2.5, AIX 4.1 and higher, and PC-DOS J6.3/V and above |

Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet:

Table 63. Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IPX/SPX | PCL5e, PostScript | Novell NetWare 2.15, 2.2, 3.0, 3.1, 3.11, 3.12, 4.0, 4.01, 4.1 (NEST 1.0) |

Table 63. Optional Token-Ring and Ethernet (continued)

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|-----------------|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TCP/IP | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | Novell NetWare 3.11, 3.12, 4.0, 4.01, 4.1 IBM LAN Server 2.0 and above Windows NT 3.51/4.0AIX 3.2.5, 4.1, 4.2 and later OS/400 3.1 and later Sun Solaris 2.3 and higher SCO-UNIX 3, SCO-UNIX 5 HP-UX 9, HP-UX 10 |
| TCP/IP | PostScript | NetWare J 3.12J and 4.11J |
| TCP/IP | IPDS | Infoprint Manager for AIX 2.1 PSF/MVS 2.2 PSF for OS/390 PSF/400 3.1, 3.2, 3.6, 3.7, 4.1 |
| TCP/IP | PAGES | NetWare 3.12J & 4.11J IBM LAN Server 2.0 and above IBM AIX 3.2.5 and above OS/400 V3.2 and above with HPT |
| IPX/SPX | PostScript | NetWare J 3.12J and 4.11J |
| NETBIOS/NETBEUI | PCL5e, PostScript 2 | IBM LAN Server 1.3 and above Microsoft LAN Manager 2.0 and above |
| IEEE 802.3 | IPDS | Inoprint Manager for AIX 2.1 PSF/MVS 2.2 PSF for OS/390 PSF/400 3.1, 3.2, 3.6, 3.7, 4.1 |
| TokenTalk | PostScript 2 | Apple System 7 KajiTalk 7.5/7.6, MAC OS 8.0 |
| EtherTalk | PostScript 2 | Apple System 7 KajiTalk 7.5/7.6, MAC OS 8.0 |
| IPX/SPX | PAGES | NetWare 3.12J & 4.11J |
| NETBIOS/NETBEUI | PAGES | IBM LAN Server 2.0 and above |

Optional Coax Interface:

Table 64. Optional Coax Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/MVS 2.2, PSF for OS/390 |
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/VSE 2.2.1 |
| NDS | IPDS | PSF/VM 2.1.1, 2.1.0 + maintenance |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | Infoprint Server |
| NDS | IPDS | GDDM 2.3 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | GDDM 2.3 |
| NDS | IPDS | VM RSCS 2.2 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | VM RSCS 2.2 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | JES328X 2.0 |
| NDS | SCS, DSC, DSE | VTAM |

Table 64. Optional Coax Interface (continued)

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|-------------|------------------|
| NDS | SCS | CICS/MVS |
| NDS | SCS | CICS/VSE |

Optional Twinax Interface:

Table 65. Optional Twinax Interface

| Protocol | Data Stream | Operating System |
|----------|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Arctic | IPDS | PSF/400 3.1, 3.2, 3.6, 3.7, 4.1, 4.2 |
| Arctic | IPDS | OS/400 3.1, 3.2, 3.6, 3.7, 4.1, 4.2 |
| Arctic | SCS | OS/400 3.6, 3.1, 3.0.5 |
| Arctic | SCS, IPDS | SSP Rel. 7.1 |
| Arctic | SCS, IPDS | OS/400 3.6 with SSP Rel. 7.5 |

Chapter 9. Infoprint 60 Printer (3160-002)

This section describes Infoprint 60 printer characteristics. The Infoprint 60 printer is a cut-sheet printer that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 60 impressions per minute.



Figure 16. Infoprint 60 Printer

Table 66 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 60 printer.

Table 66. Infoprint 60 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 60 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams | IPDS and PCL |
| Form type | Cut Sheet |
| Number of input bins | Standard: 3 bins, one with up to 2000 sheets and 2 bins with up to 500 sheets each |
| | Optional: 1 bin with up to 2000 sheets |
| Number of output bins | Standard: Output tray up to 1500 sheets; top output tray up to 500 sheets |
| | Optional: 3000-sheet stacker with convenience stapler |
| Finisher Attachments | |
| Corner staple | yes |
| Edge staple | yes |
| Side Staple | yes |
| Saddle | yes |
| Z-Fold | yes |
| Insertter | yes |
| Manual forms feed | no |
| Envelope printing | no |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for this printer. | no* |
| Duplex printing | yes |
| Color | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 240 dots-per-inch 300 dots-per-inch 600 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | 750,000 |

Printable Area

Although the Infoprint 60 printer can print to the edge of the paper, for best results, limit printing to within .24 inch (6 mm) of all edges of the sheet. Printing any closer to the edges of the sheet may result in degraded print quality and loss of characters. Figure 17 on page 59 shows an example of the printable area of a sheet for a Infoprint 60 printer. The printable area shown is 8.02 by 10.52 inches.

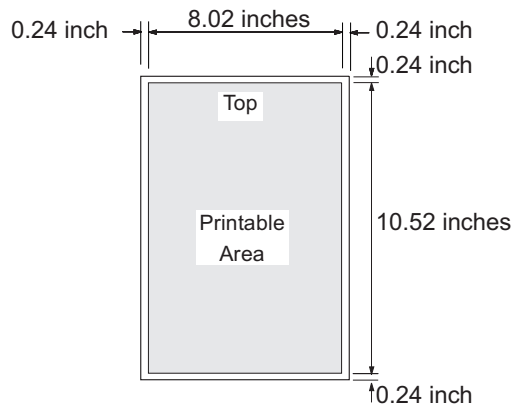


Figure 17. Recommended Printable Area for an 8.5 x 11 Inch Sheet on the Infoprint 60 Printer

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 60 printer accepts the following media:

Media types:

Plain or letterhead cutsheet paper, paper or polymer-based adhesive labels suitable for electrophotographic printing, pre-printed forms and letterheads, perforated and pre-punched (2, 3 and 4 holes) xerographic papers

Sheet sizes:

Letter (8.5 inches x 11 inches), A4 (210 mm x 297 mm), Legal (8.5 inches x 14 inches), A3 (297 mm x 420 mm), Ledger (11 inches x 17 inches), B4 (257 mm x 364 mm), B5 (182 mm x 257 mm), non-standard paper sizes from 7.48 inches x 7 inches (190 mm x 178 mm) through 11.69 inches x 17 inches (297 mm x 432 mm)

Media weights:

17 lb. to 42 lb. (64 gsm to 160 gsm); 110 lb. index (200 gsm) - letter and A4, simplex only; notebook divider tabs, 90 lb. to 110 lb. weights

Attachments

Host software support for InfoPrint 60 printer attachments are listed below.

Table 67. Attachments for the Infoprint 60 Printer

| Platform | 370 Channel Feature 4020 | Token-Ring SNA Feature 4120 | Token-Ring TCP/IP Feature 4120 | Ethernet TCP/IP Feature 4162 |
|-------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| PSF/MVS | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| PSF for OS/390 | Yes | Yes | No | No |
| PSF/VSE | Yes | Yes | No | No |
| PSF/VM | No | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| PSF/400 | No | No | Yes | Yes |
| PSF/AIX | No | No | Yes | Yes |
| PSF/2 | No | No | Yes | Yes |
| InfoPrint Manager | No | No | Yes | Yes |

Chapter 10. Infoprint 70 Printer (2770)

This section describes the Infoprint 70 printer characteristics. The Infoprint 70 printer is a cut-sheet printer that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 70 impressions per minute. The Infoprint 70 printer uses a high performance controller which provides IPDS processing.



Figure 18. Infoprint 70 Printer

Table 68 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 70 printer.

Table 68. Infoprint 70 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 70 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams | IPDS |
| Form type | Cut Sheet |
| Number of input bins | Standard: Two 500-sheet trays; one 2000-sheet tray; one 150-sheet auxiliary tray Optional: 3000-sheet high-capacity feeder (A4 or letter size only) |
| Number of output bins | Standard: One 200-sheet stacker; one 2000-sheet stacker with stapling capability (up to 50 sheets) |

Table 68. Infoprint 70 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Finisher Attachments | |
| Corner staple | yes |
| Edge staple | yes |
| Side Staple | no |
| Saddle | no |
| Z-Fold | no |
| Insertter | no |
| Manual forms feed | no |
| Envelope printing | no |
| MICR printing *IBM Business Partners may have MICR solutions for this printer. | no* |
| Duplex printing | yes |
| Color | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | 400,000 |

Printable Area

Although the Infoprint 70 printer can print to the edge of the paper, for best results, limit printing to within .24 inch (6 mm) of all edges of the sheet. Printing any closer to the edges of the sheet may result in degraded print quality and loss of characters. Figure 19 shows an example of the printable area of a sheet for an Infoprint 70 printer. The printable area shown is 8.02 by 10.52 inches.

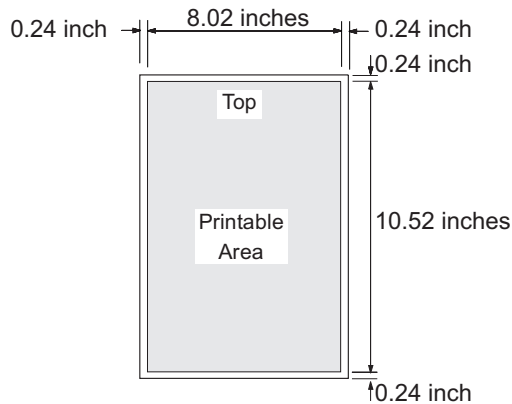


Figure 19. Recommended Printable Area for an 8.5 x 11-Inch Sheet on the Infoprint 70 Printer

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 70 printer accepts the following media:

Media types:

Plain or letterhead cutsheet paper, paper or polymer-based adhesive labels suitable for electrophotographic printing, pre-printed forms and letterheads, perforated and pre-punched (2, 3 and 4 holes) xerographic papers

Sheet sizes:

A5 (148 mm x 210 mm) through 12 inches x 18 inches (304.8 mm x 457.2 mm)

Note: Letter/A4 (long edge feed) or smaller paper sizes.

Media weights:

Copier/xerographic papers and labels: 16 to 53 lbs. (60 to 199 gsm)

Attachments

The Infoprint 70 has one interface slot with the following two options:

- Ethernet interface using the IBM Ethernet 10/100 BaseTX Adapter (feature number 4162).
- Token-Ring interface using the IBM Token-Ring 4/16 Adapter (feature number 4120).

These are mandatory features. One of them must be specified. They are mutually exclusive and there are no pre-requisites for this feature.

Host Systems Supported

Infoprint 70 supports the following host systems:

- AS/400 Systems
 - AS/400e Servers
 - AS/400e Systems
 - AS/400 Advanced Series
- RS/6000 systems
- Enterprise Servers
 - Netfinity Servers
 - S/390
 - G5, G6 Parallel Enterprise Servers
 - Multiprise Servers
 - Integrated Servers
 - ES/9000

Software

Table 69. Software Supported on the Infoprint 70 Printer

| Physical | Protocol | Operating System |
|---------------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LAN (IEEE 802.3/.5) | TCP/IP | PSF/400 4.3, 4.4, 4.5 PSF/MVS 2.2 PSF for OS/390 Infoprint Manager for AIX 3.2 Infoprint Manager for NT 1.1 |

Chapter 11. Infoprint 2000 NP1 and RP1 Printers (2710–NP1, 2710–RP1)

This section describes the Infoprint 2000–NP1 and –RP1 printer characteristics. The Infoprint 2000–NP1 and –RP1 are cut-sheet printers that use laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes.



Figure 20. Infoprint 2000–NP1 and –RP1 Printer

Table 70 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 2000 NP1 and RP1 printers.

Table 70. Infoprint 2000 NP1 and RP1 Printers' Characteristics

| Characteristics | Characteristic Value Infoprint 2000–NP1 Infoprint 2000–RP1 |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 110 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Electrophotographic/LED |
| Datastreams | PostScript 3 and PCL6 |
| Form type | Cut Sheet |
| Number of input bins | Standard: 2 trays up to 1000 sheets each, 1 tray up to 2000 sheets Optional: 2 trays up to 1000 sheets each, 1 tray up to 2000 sheets |
| Number of output bins | Standard: Finisher top bin up to 500 sheets; finisher main bin up to 3000 sheets Optional: High capacity stacker up to 5000 sheets |
| Finisher Attachments | |
| Corner staple | yes |
| Edge staple | yes |
| Side staple | yes |
| Saddle | no |
| Z-Fold | no |
| Inserter | yes |
| Envelope printing | no |

Table 70. Infoprint 2000 NP1 and RP1 Printers' Characteristics (continued)

| Characteristics | Characteristic Value Infoprint 2000–NP1 Infoprint 2000–RP1 |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | yes |
| Color | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | 2,000,000 |

Printable Area

The Infoprint 2000–NP1 and –RP1 printers do not support edge-to-edge printing. The leading .05 inch (1 mm) is in a non-printable area. Any information in the non-printable area will be truncated. Figure 21 shows an example of the printable area of a form.

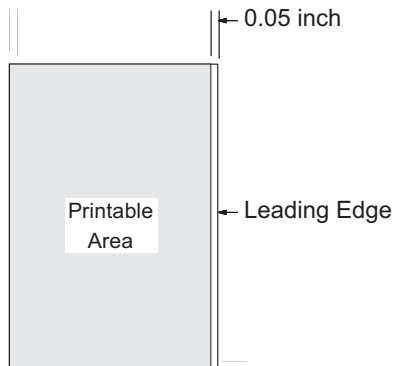


Figure 21. Printable Area in IPDS Mode on the Infoprint 2000 NP1 and RP1 Printers

Media Size and Configuration

The media loaded for your printer must match the media size in the printer configuration. If these sizes do not match, a printer error code indicates that this mismatch must be corrected by either changing the media at the printer or by changing the configuration to match the media.

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 2000 accepts the following media:

Media types:

- Xerographic, bond, book, duplicator, mimeographic, uncoated offset, ledger (tabloid), cover, index, bristol, and other long-grain plain papers (such as dual-purpose).
- Prepunched paper of these types:
 - International and Japan Standard 2–hole
 - U.S. and Japan 3–hole
 - German Standard 2– and 4–hole
 - Swedish Standard
 - U.S. 5–Hole
 - Bell/AT&T Systems 7–hole
- Recycled paper

Paper, card stock, labels, transparencies, recycled paper and envelopes

Sheet sizes:

8 inch x 10.5 inch, letter (8.5 inch x 11 inch), legal (8.5 inch x 14 inch), letter-tab (9 inch x 11 inch) manual (9 inch x 12 inch), ledger (tabloid) (11 inch x 17 inch), A4 (210 mm x 297 mm) A4 tab (225 mm x 297 mm), A3 (420 mm x 297 mm), legal-tab (9 inch x 14 inch)

Media weights:

16 to 110 lbs. (60 to 200 g/m²)

Attachments

Network Connectivity

The network connectivity option uses a 10/100BaseT Ethernet Network Interface Card (NIC) with a RJ-45 jack. Network protocol support includes TCP/IP, Appletalk, Ethernet, IPX/SPX.

Channel Connectivity

The channel connectivity option includes a channel controller standalone unit providing support for Xerox datastreams. It has connectors for channel Tag and Bus cables. Tag and Bus cables must be ordered separately for a connection to an IBM S/390 parallel channel.

Chapter 12. Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer (2710–DP1)

This section describes the Infoprint 2000–DP1 printer characteristics. The Infoprint 2000–DP1 printer is a cut-sheet printer that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes.



Figure 22. Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer

Table 71 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 2000–DP1 printer.

Table 71. Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer Characteristics

| Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate | 110 pages per minute |
| Print technology | Electrophotographic/LED |
| Datastreams ¹ | IPDS and PDF or LCDS/Metacode, PostScript 3, and PCL6 |
| Form type | Cut Sheet |
| Number of input bins | Standard: 2 trays up to 1000 sheets each, 1 tray up to 2000 sheets |
| | Optional: 2 trays up to 1000 sheets each, 1 tray up to 2000 sheets |
| Number of output bins | Standard: Finisher top bin up to 500 sheets; finisher main bin up to 3000 sheets |
| | Optional: High capacity stacker up to 5000 sheets |
| Finisher Attachments | |
| Corner staple | yes |
| Edge staple | yes |
| Side Staple | yes |
| Saddle | no |
| Z-Fold | no |
| Inserter | no |
| Envelope printing | no |
| MICR printing | no |

Table 71. Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Duplex printing | yes |
| Color | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dots-per-inch |
| Maximum impressions per month (duty cycle) | 2,000,000 |
| 1. With the IPDS feature installed the Infoprint 2000-DP1 cannot accept the LCDS/Metacode, PostScript 3, and PCL6 datastreams. | |

Printable Area

The Infoprint 2000–DP1 printer does not support edge-to-edge printing. The leading .05 inch (1 mm) is in a non-printable area. Any information in the non-printable area will be truncated. Figure 23 shows an example of the printable area of a form.

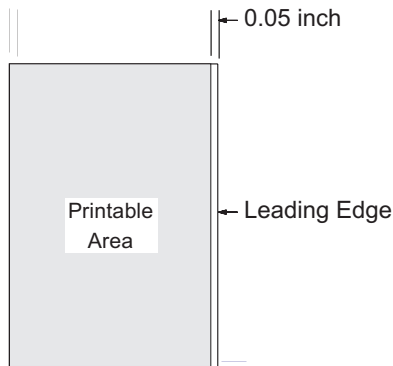


Figure 23. Printable Area in IPDS Mode on the Infoprint 2000–DP1 Printer

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 2000–DP1 printer accepts the following media:

Media types:

- Xerographic, bond, book, duplicator, mimeographic, uncoated offset, ledger (tabloid), cover, index, bristol, and other long-grain plain papers (such as dual-purpose).
- Prepunched paper of these types:
 - International and Japan Standard 2–hole
 - U.S. and Japan 3–hole
 - German Standard 2– and 4–hole
 - Swedish Standard
 - U.S. 5–Hole
 - Bell/AT&T Systems 7–hole
- Recycled paper

Paper, card stock, labels, transparencies, recycled paper and envelopes

Sheet sizes:

8 inch x 10.5 inch, letter (8.5 inch x 11 inch), legal (8.5 inch x 14 inch), letter-tab (9 inch x 11 inch) manual (9 inch x 12 inch), ledger (tabloid) (11 inch x 17 inch), A4 (210 mm x 297 mm) A4 tab (225 mm x 297 mm), A3 (420 mm x 297 mm), legal-tab (9 inch x 14 inch)

Media weights:

16 to 110 lbs. (60 to 200 g/m²)

Attachments

Non-IPDS Attachment Features

Network Connectivity: The network connectivity option uses a 10/100BaseT Ethernet Network Interface Card (NIC) with a RJ-45 jack. Network protocol support includes TCP/IP, Appletalk, Ethernet, IPX/SPX.

Channel Connectivity: The channel connectivity option includes a channel controller standalone unit providing support for Xerox datastreams. It has connectors for channel Tag and Bus cables. Tag and Bus cables must be ordered separately for a connection to an IBM S/390 parallel channel.

IPDS Attachment Features

S/370 Parallel Channel Attachment for IPDS: This feature provides a System/370 Parallel Channel Attachment when using IPDS.

ESCON Channel Attachment for IPDS: This feature provides the ESCON Channel Attachment when using IPDS. The customer has the option of choosing one or two attachments when ordering the Infoprint 2000.

Token-Ring Attachment for IPDS: The token-ring feature provides the native attachment of an Infoprint 2000 printing system to a LAN via Token-Ring when using IPDS.

10/100BaseT Ethernet (TCP/IP) Attachment for IPDS: This feature provides the attachment of the Infoprint 2000 Printing System to a LAN via 10/100BaseT Ethernet (TCP/IP) when using IPDS.

FDDI (TCP/IP) Attachment for IPDS: This feature provides a native attachment of the Infoprint 2000 printing system to a LAN via FDDI (TCP/IP) when using IPDS.

Chapter 13. Infoprint 3000–ES1 and –ED1/ED2 Printers (3300)

This section describes the Infoprint 3000–ES1 and Infoprint 3000–ED1/ED2 printer characteristics. The Infoprint 3000 printers are continuous forms printers that use laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes.



Figure 24. Infoprint 3000–ED1/ED2 Printer

Table 72 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 3000–ES1 and –ED1/ED2 printers.

Table 72. Infoprint 3000–ES1 and –ED1/ED2 Printer Characteristics

| Printer characteristic | Characteristic Value Infoprint 3000–ES1 | Characteristic Value Infoprint 3000–ED1/ED2 |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Print technology | Laser | |
| Datastreams | IPDS | |
| Form type | Continuous | |
| Number of input bins | Up to 15.5 inch (394 mm) stack of paper | |
| Number of output bins | Up to 12 inch (305 mm) stack of paper | |
| Finisher attachments | n/a | |
| Manual forms feed | n/a | |
| Envelope printing | n/a | |
| MICR printing | no | |
| Duplex printing | no | |
| Color | no | |
| Adjust print-quality levels | yes | |
| Printhead resolution | 480 dots-per-inch 600 dots-per-inch | |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | | |
| inches per second | 15.9 | |
| inches per minute | 954 | |

Table 72. Infoprint 3000–ES1 and –ED1/ED2 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ¹ | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 114 | |
| 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | n/a | 228 |
| 2–up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | 172 | |
| 2–up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | n/a | 344 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | | |
| mm per second | 404 | |
| mm per minute | 24,231 | |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ¹ | | |
| 1–up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 114 | |
| 1–up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | n/a | 228 |
| 2–up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | 162 | |
| 2–up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | n/a | 324 |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ² | | |
| Letter: 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 2,800,000 simplex | 5,600,000 duplex |
| Letter: 2–up portrait (11 inches long) | 4,400,000 simplex | 8,800,000 duplex |
| A4: 1–up landscape (210 mm long) | 3,000,000 simplex | 6,000,000 duplex |
| A4: 2–up portrait (297 mm long) | 4,000,000 simplex | 8,000,000 duplex |
| <p>1. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>2. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | | |

Printable Area

The printable area depends on the size of the form being used. The Infoprint 3000–ES1 and –ED1/ED2 printers can print from perforation to perforation when using roll forms. However, when printing on folded forms, the printing may be degraded in areas near a folded perforation, an internal perforation, or any cut in the form because of the “tenting” (*fold memory*) of the form.

Figure 25 on page 75 shows an example of the printable area of a standard, letter-size roll form for the Infoprint 3000. Notice that the media origin is located in different corners for wide and narrow forms. Although the maximum printable area for narrow forms is 8.5 by 17 inches, and the maximum printable area for wide forms is 17 by 17 inches, the examples show the printable area for letter-size forms.

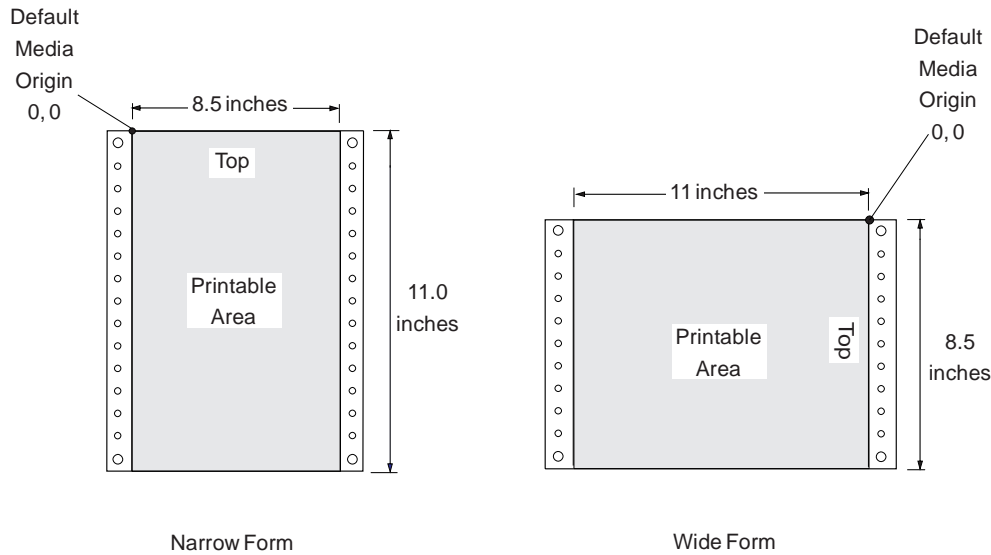


Figure 25. Printable Area on the Infoprint 3000-ES1 and -ED1/ED2 Printers

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 3000-ES1 and -ED1/ED2 printers accept the following media:

Media types:

Preprinted or blank fanfold forms, roll-feed paper

Media widths:

Model ES1

8 inches to 18 inches (203 mm to 457 mm)

Models ED1/ED2

9 inches to 18 inches (229 mm to 457 mm)

Media lengths:

7 inches to 14 inches (178 mm to 356 mm) standard; 7 inches to 28 inches (178 mm to 712 mm) with pre- and post-processing options

Media weights:

Model ES1

16 lb. to 42 lb. (60 gsm to 157 gsm)

Models ED1/ED2

16 lb. to 28 lb. (60 gsm to 105 gsm)

Attachments

The InfoPrint 3000-ES1 and 3000-ED1/ED2 support a maximum of two attachments. These attachments can be:

- ESCON channel
- System/370 parallel channel
- Token Ring (TCP/IP)
- Ethernet (TCP/IP)
- FDDI (TCP/IP)

The two attachments may be the same (for example, two ESCON channels), or mixed (for example, one ESCON and one Token-Ring). The exception is that the printer can have only one TCP/IP attachment of any flavor. You cannot have two Token-Ring attachments, for example. For a single printer (a simplex printer, a duplex printing system, or a dual simplex printer), only one attachment can be active at a time. If

both attachments are to the same system, or to a tightly-coupled system, and the attachments are of the same type channel (example, both are ESCON or both are parallel channel), then switching between the two attachments can be performed dynamically by the host system. If the attachments or host differ, or the hosts are not tightly-coupled, then the switch must be performed manually by the operator. The printer must be disabled from the current system and attachment before it can be enabled to the other attachment.

System/370 Parallel Channel

System/370 parallel channel attachment is supported on OS/390, PSF/MVS, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE printing environments.

- For S/370 parallel channel attachment, a control unit position on a S/370 parallel block multiplexer channel is required on an IBM 3090™ or ES/9000™ processor.
- The following processors are also supported for S/370 parallel channel attachments: S/390 Parallel Enterprise Server, and the S/390 Multiprise 2000 servers.
- Attachment is also supported via the 9034 ESCON Converter Model 1.

ESCON Channel

ESCON channel is supported on OS/390, PSF/MVS, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE printing environments.

- The IBM Infoprint 3000-ES1 and 3000-ED1/ED2 may be attached natively to IBM ESCON channel (3090-J, 9021, 9121, 9221, 9672, 2003).
- Attachment is also supported via the 9032/9033 ESCON Directors and 9036 ESCON Remote Channel Model 1 and Model 2.

The ESCON attachment may be shared between different ESCON systems or different ESCON multiple image facility (EMIF) images, if ALL host systems connected to the printer are using the OS/390 (V1R3.0 or higher) operating system and ALL of the PSF/MVS applications in those systems have the APAR OW29992 installed. Such OS/390 systems can be guests of VM/ESA.

When these conditions are met for ESCON then the multihost flag can be set to "TRUE" in the printer. This will automatically invoke the protocol allowing the printer to print only one host (or OS/390 guest of VM) at a time. When the first host is printing the second host will receive an "assigned elsewhere" message until the first host is finished printing and releases the printer.

Token-Ring (TCP/IP) Attachment

Token-Ring (TCP/IP) attachment is supported on PS/400, PSF for AIX, and Infoprint Manager for AIX printing environments along with selected RS/6000 and AS/400 models. The 3000-ES1 and 3000-ED1/ED2 are connected to the host Token-Ring through the IBM Token-Ring cabling via the Token Ring High-performance adapter, which is contained in the AFCCU. The control unit can be attached to either a 16 Mbit/sec or a 4 Mbit/sec Token-Ring LAN. The TCP/IP Token-Ring Attachment will attach to the following devices:

- 8228 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to an AS/400 or RS/6000 processor
- 8230 Token Ring Network Controller Access attached to an AS/400 or RS/6000 processor
- 8228 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3174, 3745, 3725, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor
- 8230 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3174, 3745, 3725, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor

The printer may be located at a maximum distance of 100 meters (328 ft) from the 8228 Multistation Access Unit or 8230 Controlled Access Unit.

The distance between the 8228 Multistation Access Units can be increased with either the 8220 or 8219 Optical Fiber Repeater.

- Installation Instructions are provided with the feature.

Ethernet 10/100 BaseT (TCP/IP)

Ethernet 10/100 BaseT (TCP/IP) attachment is supported on PSF/400, PSF for AIX, and Infoprint Manager for AIX printing environments. An Ethernet Adapter Card is supplied with Specify Feature number 9993 and Special Feature number 4165. The adapter card is installed in the IBM Infoprint 3000-ES1 and ED2 AFCCU processors. The IBM Infoprint 3000-ES1 and ED1/ED2 may then be attached to an Ethernet LAN.

- 10/100 BaseT LAN using Twisted Pair Cabling
 - IBM supplies a Twisted Pair wrap plug (PN 00G2380)
- Installation Instructions are provided with the features.

FDDI (TCP/IP)

FDDI (TCP/IP) attachment is supported on PSF for AIX and Infoprint Manager printing environments and for selected RS/6000 models. The Infoprint 3000-ES1 and 3000-ED1/ED2 are connected to the host FDDI through FDDI 62.5/125 multimode fiber cabling using SC connectors via the FDDI Single Station adapter, which is contained in the AFCCU. The FDDI (TCP/IP) attachment will attach to the following devices:

- Directly to RS/6000
- 8260 Multiprotocol Intelligent Switching Hub attached to an RS/6000 processor

The printer may be located at a maximum distance of 2 Kilometers from the 826 Multiprotocol Intelligent Switching Hub or RS/6000 processor.

Chapter 14. Infoprint 4000 IS1– and –IS2 Printers (4000–IS1 and –IS2)

This section describes the Infoprint 4000–IS1 and Infoprint 4000–IS2 printer characteristics. The Infoprint 4000–IS1 and Infoprint 4000–IS2 are continuous-forms printers that use laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 229 impressions per minute (ipm) for the Infoprint 4000–IS1 printer and 324 impressions per minute (ipm) for the Infoprint 4000–IS2 printer.



Figure 26. Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 Printers

Table 73 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 printers.

Table 73. Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value Infoprint 4000–IS1 | Characteristic Value Infoprint 4000–IS2 ¹ |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Print technology | Laser | |
| Datastreams | IPDS | |
| Form type | Continuous | |
| Number of input bins | Up to 16 inch (406 mm) stack of paper (box) | |
| Number of output bins | Up to 14 inch (355 mm) stack of paper; supports 7 inch to 14 inch folds | |
| Finisher attachments | n/a | |
| Manual forms feed | n/a | |
| Envelope printing | n/a | |

Table 73. Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| MICR printing *With either RPQ 8B4013 or 8B4018 installed | yes* | |
| Duplex printing | no | |
| Color *With the IBM 4005 Infoprint Hi-Lite Color printer attached ² | yes* | |
| Adjust print-quality levels | yes | |
| Printhead resolution | 240 dpi 300 dpi | |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | | |
| inches per second | 32.5 | 46 |
| inches per minute | 1,950 | 2,760 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ³ | | |
| 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 229 | 324 |
| 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | n/a | |
| 2–up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | 354 | 501 |
| 2–up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | n/a | |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | | |
| mm per second | 825 | 1168 |
| mm per minute | 49,530 | 70,104 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ³ | | |
| 1–up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 235 | 330 |
| 1–up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | n/a | |
| 2–up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | 333 | 472 |
| 2–up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | n/a | |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ⁴ | | |
| Letter: 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 5,600,000 simplex | 8,000,000 simplex |
| Letter: 2–up landscape 11 inches long) | 8,700,000 simplex | 12,300,000 simplex |
| A4: 1–up landscape (210 mm long) | 5,700,000 simplex | 8,100,000 simplex |
| A4: 2–up landscape (297 mm long) | 8,200,000 simplex | 11,500,000 simplex |
| <p>1. The 4000–IS2 printer was originally shipped with a print speed of 44 inches per second. All 4000–IS2 printers shipped after February 17, 1998 (or with upgrades 9324 or 4260 installed) have a print speed of 46 inches per second.</p> <p>2. The Infoprint 4005 Hi-Lite Color post-processor provides a high-speed, high-quality, all-points-addressable (APA) color printing system to complement the industry-leading quality and reliability the IBM Infoprint 4000 Wide or Wide Duplex printers (240 dpi models). Visit the IBM Printing Systems Inter page at http://www.ibm.com/printers for more information about the Infoprint 4005.</p> <p>3. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>4. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | | |

Printable Area

The printable area depends on the size of the form being used. The Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 printers can print from perforation to perforation when using roll forms. However, when printing on folded forms, the printing may be degraded in areas near a folded perforation, an internal perforation, or any cut in the form because of the “tenting” (*fold memory*) of the form.

Figure 27 shows examples of the printable areas of a roll form for a Infoprint 4000 IS1 and IS2 printers. Notice that the media origin is located in different corners for wide and narrow forms. The printable area for the narrow form is 8.5 by 11 inches. The printable area for the wide form is 11 by 8.5 inches.

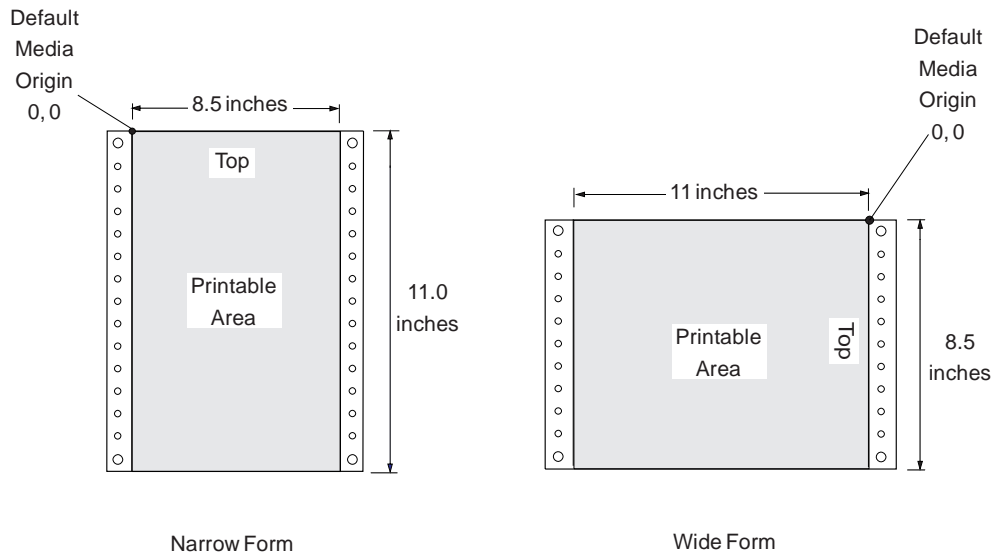


Figure 27. Printable Area for 9.5 by 11-Inch (Narrow) and a 12 by 8.5-Inch (Wide) Roll Forms on Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 printers

Figure 28 on page 82 shows examples of the printable areas of folded forms for a Infoprint 4000–IS1 and –IS2 printers. Notice that the media origin is located in different corners for wide and narrow forms. The printable area for the narrow form is 8.5 by 10.66 inches. The printable area for the wide form is 11 by 8.16 inches.

FOR TEXT, OCR, AND BAR CODES

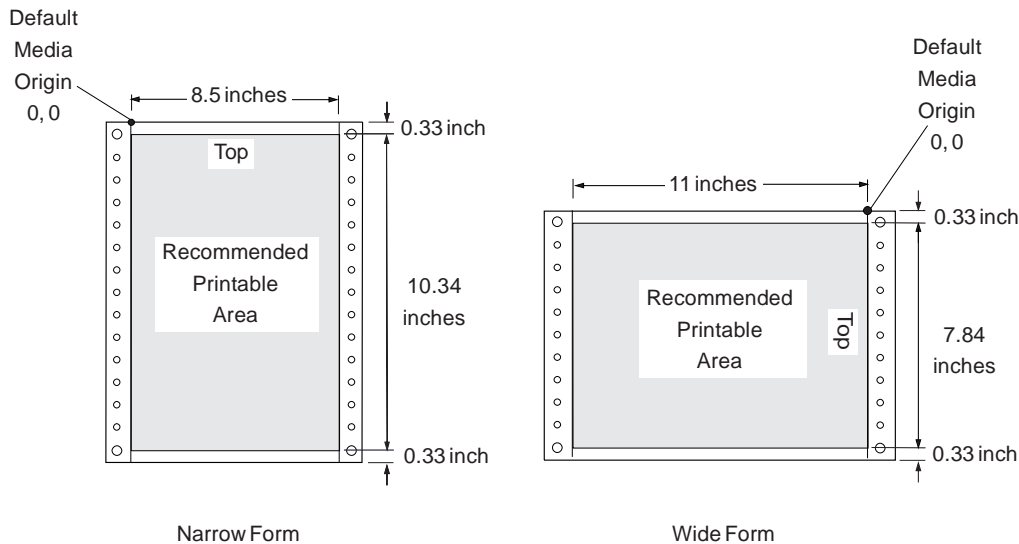


Figure 28. Printable Area for 9.5 by 11-Inch (Narrow) and a 12 by 8.5-Inch (Wide) Folded Forms on Infoprint 4000-IS1 and -IS2 printers

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 4000-IS1 and -IS2 printers accept the following media:

Media types:

Preprinted or blank fanfold forms, roll feed paper, some labels

Media widths:

8 inches to 18 inches (203 to 457 mm)

Media lengths:

3 inches to 14 inches (76 to 356 mm) standard; up to 28 inches (711 mm) with RPQ (additional memory required)

Media weights:

Model IS1

16 to 42 lbs. (60 to 160 gsm)

Model IS2

16 to 28 lbs. (60 to 105 gsm)

Attachments

System/370 Parallel Channel

For S/370 parallel channel attachment, a control unit position on a S/370 parallel block multiplexer channel is required on an IBM 4361, 4381, 3090, ES/9370, or ES/9000 processor. The following processors are also supported for S/370 parallel channel attachment, Parallel Enterprise Server Models R1, R2, and R3 S/390 G3 Enterprise Server, and the S/390 Multiprise™ 2000. Attachment is also supported via the 9034 ESCON converter model 1. The S/370 Channel is supported in MVS, VM, and VSE operating system environments.

ESCON Channel

The IBM InfoPrint 4000 IS1/IS2 may be attached natively to ESCON channels. Note that when attached via ESCON, the IBM InfoPrint 4000 IS1/IS2 is supported on the MVS, VM, and VSE operating systems only. The IBM InfoPrint 4000 IS1/IS2 may also be attached to selected PS/2, RS/6000, AS/400 models

using Token-Ring (TCP/IP), or Ethernet (TCP/IP). Attachment is also supported via the 9032/9033 ESCON Directors, and 9036 ESCON Remote Channel Extender.

Token-Ring (TCP/IP) Attachment

The IBM InfoPrint 4000 IS1/IS2 is connected to the host Token-Ring through the IBM Token-Ring cabling via the Token-Ring High-Performance adapter, which is contained in the AFCCU. The attachment card and token-ring adapter cable P/N 53F3930 (approximately 4.6 m (15 ft)) in length are included with the IBM InfoPrint 4000 IS1/IS2. The control unit can be attached to either a 16Mbit/sec or a 4Mbit/sec Token-Ring LAN. The TCP/IP Token Ring Attachment will attach to the following devices:

- 8228 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to an AS/400, PS/2, or RS/6000 processor.
- 8230 Token Ring Network Controller Access Unit attached to an AS/400, PS/2, or RS/6000 processor.
- 8228 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3174, 3745, 3725 or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, 308X or 4381 processor.
- 8230 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3174, 3745, 3725, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, 308X or 4381 processor.

The printer may be located at a maximum distance of 100 meters (333ft.) from the 8228 Multistation Access Unit or 8230 Controlled Access Unit. The distance between the 8228 Multistation Access Units can be increased with either the 8220 or 8219 Optical Fiber Repeater.

Ethernet (TCP/IP) Attachment

An Ethernet Adapter Card (P/N 00G3369) is supplied with Specify Feature 9990 and Special Feature 4161. This is installed in the processor of the AFCCU of the IBM InfoPrint 4000 IS1/IS2. The IBM InfoPrint 4000 IS1/IS2 may then be attached to an Ethernet LAN via one of the following means:

- Ethernet Thin Coax
 - IBM Supplies a Thin Coax wrap connector (P/N 02G7433)
- Ethernet Thick Coax
 - IBM Supplies the Thick Coax wrap connector (D-shell connector; P/N 71F1167)
- Ethernet Twisted Pair
 - IBM Supplies a Twisted Pair Transceiver (P/N 00G2906)
 - IBM Supplies a Twisted Pair Wrap plug (P/N 00G2380)

Chapter 15. Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 Printers (4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4)

This section describes the Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and Infoprint–IR3/IR4 printer characteristics. The Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 are continuous-forms printers that use laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 464 impressions per minute (ipm) for the Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 printer and 708 impressions per minute (ipm) for the Infoprint 4000–IR3/IR4 printer in duplex mode. The Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 printers have 18-inch wide paper paths with a 17-inch wide print width, which permits printing of two 8.5-by-11 inch or two ISO A4 pages on a single side of a sheet. The Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 printers use the Advanced Function Common Control Unit (AFCCU) based on RISC technology.

The Infoprint 4000 –IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 also has 480/600 pels-per-inch resolution and the Print Quality Enhancement (PQE) function, which smoothes edges on diagonal lines, protects fine details, improves the fidelity of images, and allows for adjustment of the boldness of text and the darkness of images.



Figure 29. Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 Printers

Table 74 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 printers

Table 74. Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 | Characteristic Value Infoprint 4000–IR3/IR4 |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Print technology | Laser | |
| Datastreams | IPDS | |
| Form type | Continuous | |
| Number of input bins | Up to 16 inch (406 mm) stack of paper (box) | |
| Number of output bins | Up to 14 inch (356 mm) stack of paper (internal stacker); supports 7 inch to 14 inch folds | |
| Finisher attachments | n/a | |
| Manual forms feed | n/a | |
| Envelope printing | n/a | |
| MICR printing | no | |
| Duplex printing | yes | |
| Color | no | |

Table 74. Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Adjust print-quality levels | yes | |
| Printhead resolution | 480 dpi 600 dpi | |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | | |
| inches per second | 21.3 | 32.5 |
| inches per minute | 1,278 | 1,950 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ¹ | | |
| 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 153 | 229 |
| 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | 306 | 458 |
| 2–up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | 232 | 354 |
| 2–up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | 464 | 708 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | | |
| mm per second | 541 | 825 |
| mm per minute | 32,461 | 49,530 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ¹ | | |
| 1–up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 153 | 235 |
| 1–up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | 306 | 470 |
| 2–up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | 218 | 333 |
| 2–up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | 436 | 666 |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ² | | |
| Letter: 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 7,300,000 duplex | 8,700,000 duplex |
| Letter: 2–up portrait (11 inches long) | 11,300,000 duplex | 17,400,000 duplex |
| A4: 1–up landscape (210 mm long) | 7,500,000 duplex | 8,200,000 duplex |
| A4: 2–up portrait (297 mm long) | 10,700,000 duplex | 16,700,000 duplex |
| <p>1. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>2. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | | |

Printable Area

The printable area depends on the size of the form being used. The Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 printers can print from perforation to perforation when using roll forms. However, when printing on folded forms, the printing may be degraded in areas near a folded perforation, an internal perforation, or any cut in the form because of the “tenting” (*fold memory*) of the form.

Figure 30 on page 87 shows an example of the printable area of a standard, letter-size roll form for the Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 and –IR3/IR4 printers. Notice that the media origin is located in different corners for wide and narrow forms. Although the maximum printable area for narrow forms is 8.5 by 17 inches, and the maximum printable area for wide forms is 17 by 17 inches, the examples show the printable area for letter-size forms.

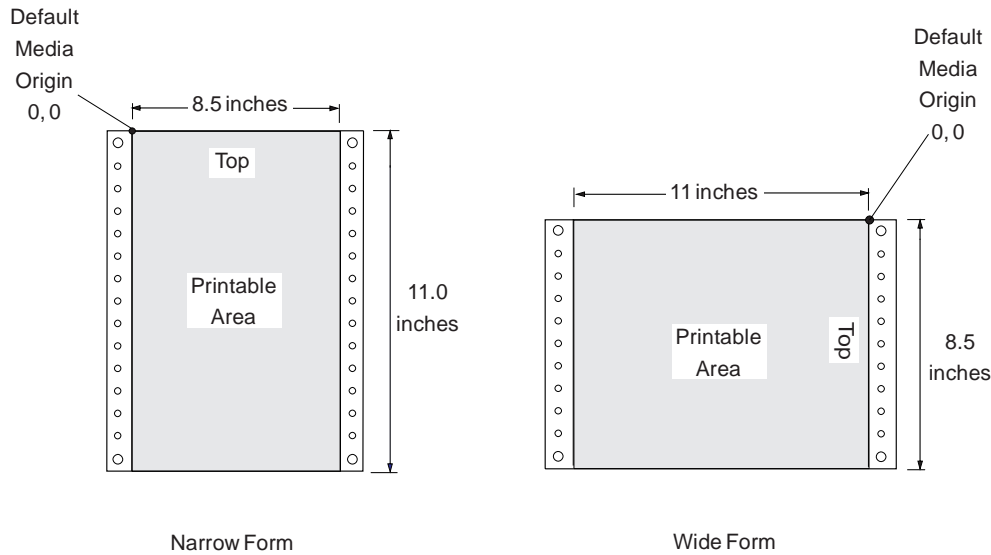


Figure 30. Printable Area in IPDS Mode on the Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 and -IR3/IR4 Printers

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 and -IR3/IR4 printers accept the following media:

Media types:

Preprinted or blank fanfold forms, roll-feed paper, some labels

Media widths:

9 inches to 18 inches (225 mm to 457 mm); 17 inches maximum (432 mm) when operating with pinless RPQ

Media lengths:

3 inches to 14 inches (76 mm to 356 mm) with on-board stacker; 3 inches to 25 inches (76 mm to 635 mm) with Post-Processing

Media weights:

16 lb. to 28 lb. (60 gsm to 105 gsm)

Attachments

The InfoPrint 4000-IR1/IR2 and -IR3/IR4 supports a maximum of two attachments. These attachments can be:

- ESCON channel
- System/370 parallel channel
- Token Ring (TCP/IP)
- FDDI (TCP/IP)

The two attachments may be the same (e.g., 2 ESCON channels), or mixed (eg., 1 ESCON and 1 Token-Ring). The exception is that the printer can have only 1 TCP/IP attachment of any flavor. You cannot have 2 Token-Ring or 2 FDDI attachments, or a combination of 1 Token-Ring or 1 FDDI attachments.

When printing in duplex configuration, only one attachment can be active at a time. If both attachments are to the same system, or to a tightly-coupled system, and the attachments are of the same type (example, both are ESCON or both are parallel channel), then switching between the two attachments can be performed dynamically by the host system. If the attachments or host differ, or the hosts are not tightly-coupled, then the switch must be performed manually by the operator. The printer must be disabled from the current system and attachment before it can be enabled to the other attachment.

System/370 Parallel Channel

System/370 parallel channel attachment is supported on PSF/MVS, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE printing environments. For S/370 parallel channel attachment, a control unit position on a S/370 parallel block multiplexer channel is required on an IBM 3090™ or ES/9000™ processor. The following processors are also supported for S370 parallel channel attachments, S/390 Parallel Enterprise Server, and the S/390 Multiprise 2000 servers. Attachment is also supported via the 9034 ESCON Converter Model 1.

ESCON Channel

ESCON channel is supported on PSF/MVS, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE printing environments. The IBM InfoPrint 4000 may be attached natively to IBM ESCON channels (3090-J, 9021, 9121, 9221, 9672, 2003). Attachment is also supported via the 9032/9033 ESCON Directors and 9036 ESCON Remote Channel Extender model 1 and model 2.

Token-Ring (TCP/IP) Attachment

Token-Ring (TCP/IP) attachment is supported on PSF for OS/2 and PSF for AIX printing environments along with selected RS/6000 and AS/400 models. The 4000 is connected to the host Token-Ring through the IBM Token-Ring cabling via the Token Ring High-performance adapter, which is contained in the AFCCU. The control unit can be attached to either a 16Mbit/sec or a 4Mbit/sec Token-Ring LAN. The TCP/IP Token-Ring Attachment will attach to the following devices:

- 8228 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to an AS/400 or RS/6000 processor
- 8230 Token Ring Network Controller Access attached to an AS/400 or RS/6000 processor
- 8228 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3174, 3745, 3725, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor
- 8230 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3174, 3745, 3725, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor

The printer may be located at a maximum distance of 100 meters (333 ft) from the 8228 Multistation Access Unit or 8230 Controlled Access Unit.

The distance between the 8228 Multistation Access Units can be increased with either the 8220 or 8219 Optical Fiber Repeater.

- Installation Instructions are provided with the feature.

FDDI (TCP/IP)

FDDI (TCP/IP) attachment is supported on PFS for AIX printing environments for selected RS/6000 models. The 4000 is connected to the host FDDI through FDDI 62.5/125 multi-mode fiber cabling using SC connectors via the FDDI Single Station adapter, which is contained in the AFCCU. The FDDI (TCP/IP) attachment will attach to the following devices:

- Directly to RS/6000
- 8260 Multiprotocol Intelligent Switching Hub attached to an RS/6000 processor.

The printer may be located at a maximum distance of 2 Kilometers from the 8260 Multiprotocol Intelligent Switching Hub or RS/6000 processor.

Chapter 16. Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printers (4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4)

This chapter describes Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 printer characteristics. The Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 printers are a channel-attached or LAN-attached, continuous-forms printer that use a laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 229 ipm (impressions per minute) for the Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and 324 ipm for the –ID3/ID4. The Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 printers use the Advanced Function Common Control Unit (AFCCU) based on RISC technology, which provides as standard the Advanced Function Image and Graphics (AFIG) feature and the Decompression Performance Enhancement (DPE) feature.

The Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 printers also have 300 pels-per-inch resolution and the Print Quality Enhancement (PQE) function, which smooths edges on diagonal lines, protects fine details, improves the fidelity of images, and allows for adjustment of the boldness of text and the darkness of images.



Figure 31. Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printers

Table 75 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 printers.

Table 75. Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 | Characteristic Value Infoprint 4000–ID3/ID4 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Print technology | Laser | |
| Datastreams | IPDS | |
| Form type | Continuous | |
| Number of input bins | Up to 16 inch (406 mm) stack of paper (box) | |
| Number of output bins | Up to 14 inch (355 mm) stack of paper | |
| Finisher attachments | n/a | |
| Manual forms feed | n/a | |
| Envelope printing | n/a | |
| MICR printing *With either RPQ 8B4013 or 8B4018 installed | yes* | |
| Duplex printing | yes | |

Table 75. Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Color *With the IBM 4005 Infoprint Hi-Lite Color printer attached ² | yes* | |
| Adjust print-quality levels | yes | |
| Printhead resolution | 240 dpi 300 dpi | |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | | |
| inches per second | 32.5 | 46 |
| inches per minute | 1,950 | 2,760 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ² | | |
| 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 229 | 324 |
| 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | 458 | 648 |
| 2–up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | 354 | 501 |
| 2–up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | 708 | 1,002 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | | |
| mm per second | 825 | 1168 |
| mm per minute | 49,530 | 70,104 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ² | | |
| 1–up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 235 | 330 |
| 1–up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | 470 | 660 |
| 2–up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | 333 | 472 |
| 2–up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | 666 | 944 |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ³ | | |
| Letter: 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 11,200,000 duplex | 16,200,000 duplex |
| Letter: 2–up portrait (11 inches long) | 17,400,000 duplex | 24,600,000 duplex |
| A4: 1–up landscape (210 mm long) | 11,600,000 duplex | 16,300,000 duplex |
| A4: 2–up portrait (297 mm long) | 16,700,000 duplex | 23,000,000 duplex |
| <p>1. The Infoprint 4005 Hi-Lite Color post-processor provides a high-speed, high-quality, all-points-addressable (APA) color printing system to complement the industry-leading quality and reliability the IBM Infoprint 4000 ID1/ID2 Wide or Wide Duplex printers (240 dpi models). Visit the IBM Printing Systems Inter page at http://www.ibm.com/printers for more information about the Infoprint 4005.</p> <p>2. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>3. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | | |

Printable Area

The printable area depends on the size of the form being used. The Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 printers can print from perforation to perforation when using roll forms. However, when printing on folded forms, the printing may be degraded in areas near a folded perforation, an internal perforation, or any cut in the form because of the “tenting” (*fold memory*) of the form.

Figure 32 shows examples of the printable areas of a standard, letter-size roll form for a Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 printers. Notice that the media origin is located in different corners for wide and narrow forms. Although the maximum printable area for narrow forms is 8.5 by 17 inches, and the maximum printable area for wide forms is 17 by 17 inches, the examples show the printable area for letter-size forms.

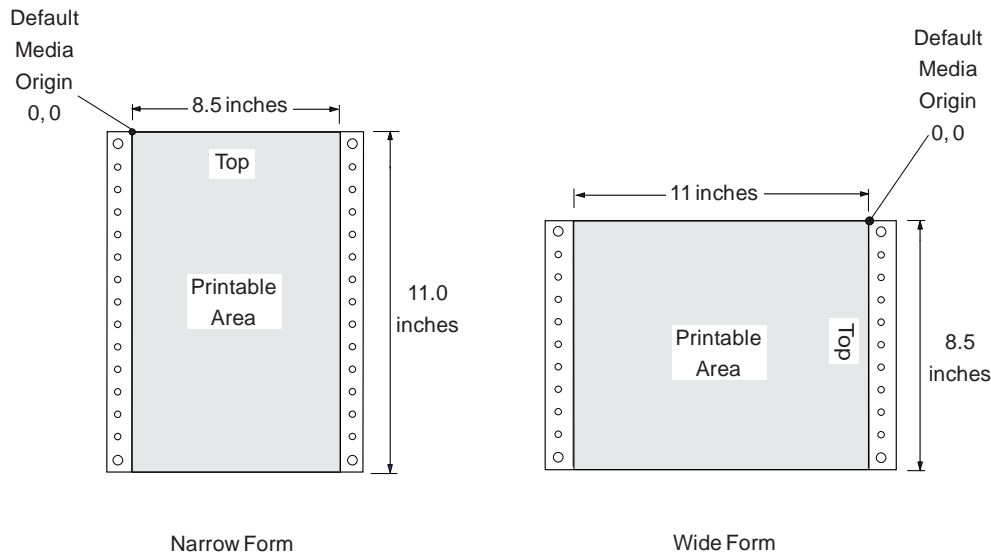


Figure 32. Recommended printable areas. These are the recommended printable areas on 9.5 by 11-inch (narrow) and 18 by 8.5-inch (wide) roll forms.

Figure 33 on page 92 and Figure 34 on page 92 show examples of the recommended printable areas for folded forms for a Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 printers. Notice that the media origin is located in different corners for wide and narrow forms. The recommended printable area for the narrow form is 8.5 by 10.34 inches for text, OCR, or bar code data and 8.5 by 10.0 inches for images or solid-fill data. The recommended printable area for the wide form is 11 by 7.84 inches for text, OCR, or bar code data and 11 by 7.5 for images or solid-fill data. The printer can print to the perforation on the leading and trailing edges of the form; however, the print quality within 0.33 inch of the perforation may be degraded.

FOR TEXT, OCR, AND BAR CODES

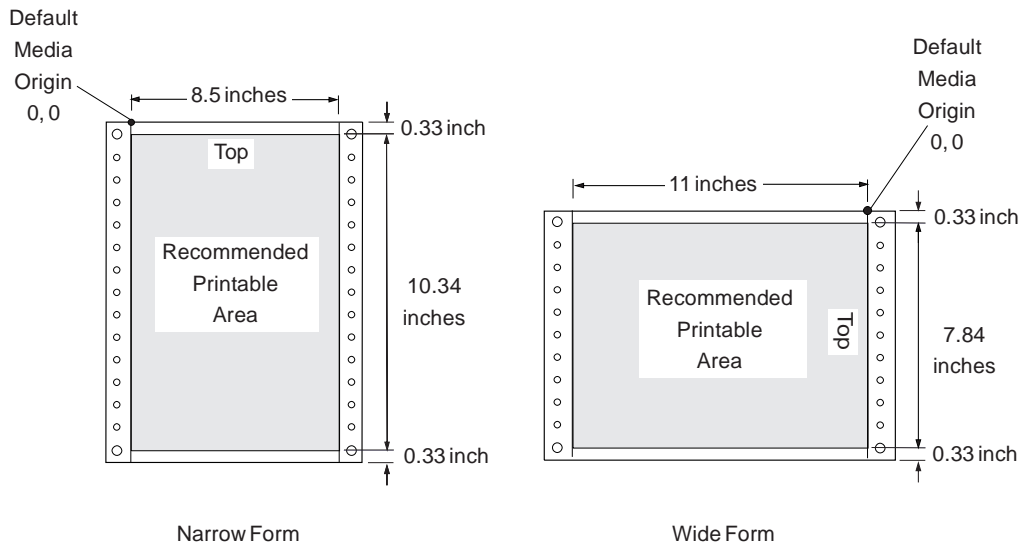


Figure 33. Folded Forms on the Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printers. These are the recommended printable areas on 9.5 by 11-inch (narrow) and 12 by 8.5-inch (wide) folded forms for printing text, OCR, and bar code data.

FOR SOLIDFILL AND IMAGES

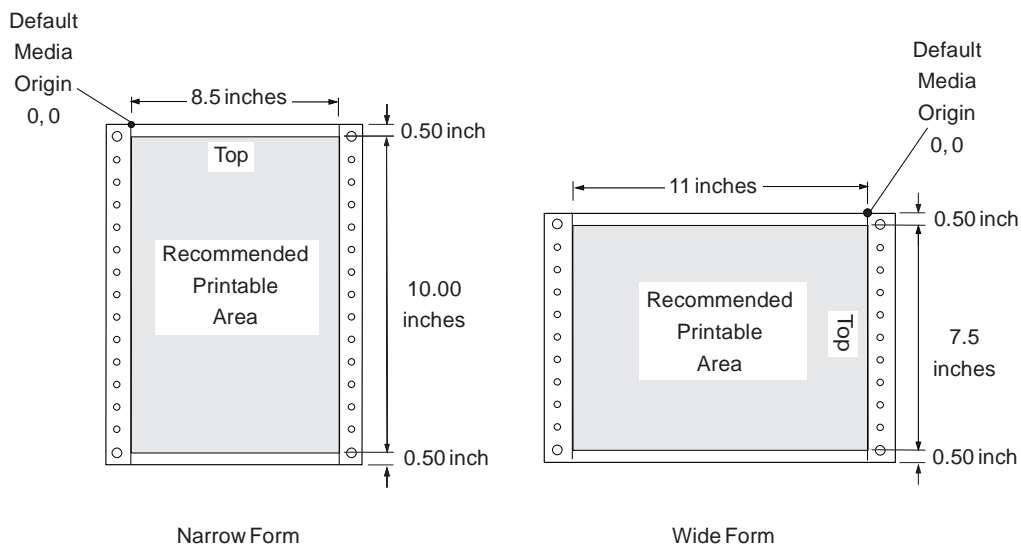


Figure 34. Folded Forms on the Infoprint–4000 ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 Printers. These are the recommended printable areas on 9.5 by 11-inch (narrow) and 12 by 8.5-inch (wide) folded forms for printing solid-fill data and images.

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 printers accept the following media:

Media types:

Preprinted or blank fanfold forms, roll-feed paper, some labels

Media widths:

Simplex

8 inches to 18 inches (203 mm to 457 mm)

Duplex

9 inches to 18 inches (229 mm to 457 mm)

Media lengths:

7 inches to 14 inches (178 mm to 356 mm) standard (Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 printer); 7 inches to 28 inches (178 mm to 712 mm) standard (Infoprint 4000–ID3/ID4 printer); 17 inches (432 mm) with post-processing; up to 22 inches (558 mm) with RPQ (additional memory required)

Media weights:

16 lb. to 42 lb. (60 gsm to 160 gsm) simplex; 18 lb. to 28 lb. (68 gsm to 107 gsm) duplex

Attachments

The InfoPrint 4000–ID1/ID2 and –ID3/ID4 supports a maximum of two attachments. These attachments can be:

- ESCON channel
- System/370 parallel channel
- Token Ring (TCP/IP)
- FDDI (TCP/IP)

The two attachments may be the same (e.g., 2 ESCON channels), or mixed (eg., 1 ESCON and 1 Token-Ring). The exception is that the printer can have only 1 TCP/IP attachment of any flavor. You cannot have 2 Token-Ring or 2 FDDI attachments, or a combination of 1 Token-Ring or 1 FDDI attachments.

When printing in duplex configuration, only one attachment can be active at a time. If both attachments are to the same system, or to a tightly-coupled system, and the attachments are of the same type (example, both are ESCON or both are parallel channel), then switching between the two attachments can be performed dynamically by the host system. If the attachments or host differ, or the hosts are not tightly-coupled, then the switch must be performed manually by the operator. The printer must be disabled from the current system and attachment before it can be enabled to the other attachment.

System/370 Parallel Channel

System/370 parallel channel attachment is supported on PSF/MVS, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE printing environments. For S/370 parallel channel attachment, a control unit position on a S/370 parallel block multiplexer channel is required on an IBM 3090™ or ES/9000™ processor. The following processors are also supported for S370 parallel channel attachments, S/390 Parallel Enterprise Server, and the S/390 Multiprise 2000 servers. Attachment is also supported via the 9034 ESCON Converter Model 1.

ESCON Channel

ESCON channel is supported on PSF/MVS, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE printing environments. The IBM InfoPrint 4000 may be attached natively to IBM ESCON channels (3090-J, 9021, 9121, 9221, 9672, 2003). Attachment is also supported via the 9032/9033 ESCON Directors and 9036 ESCON Remote Channel Extender model 1 and model 2.

Token-Ring (TCP/IP) Attachment

Token-Ring (TCP/IP) attachment is supported on PSF for OS/2 and PSF for AIX printing environments along with selected RS/6000 and AS/400 models. The Infoprint 4000 is connected to the host Token-Ring through the IBM Token-Ring cabling via the Token Ring High-performance adapter, which is contained in the AFCCU. The control unit can be attached to either a 16Mbit/sec or a 4Mbit/sec Token-Ring LAN. The TCP/IP Token-Ring Attachment will attach to the following devices:

- 8228 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to an AS/400 or RS/6000 processor
- 8230 Token Ring Network Controller Access attached to an AS/400 or RS/6000 processor
- 8228 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3174, 3745, 3725, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor
- 8230 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3174, 3745, 3725, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor

The printer may be located at a maximum distance of 100 meters (333 ft) from the 8228 Multistation Access Unit or 8230 Controlled Access Unit.

The distance between the 8228 Multistation Access Units can be increased with either the 8220 or 8219 Optical Fiber Repeater.

- Installation Instructions are provided with the feature.

FDDI (TCP/IP)

FDDI (TCP/IP) attachment is supported on PFS for AIX printing environments for selected RS/6000 models. The 4000 is connected to the host FDDI through FDDI 62.5/125 multi-mode fiber cabling using SC connectors via the FDDI Single Station adapter, which is contained in the AFCCU. The FDDI (TCP/IP) attachment will attach to the following devices:

- Directly to RS/6000
- 8260 Multiprotocol Intelligent Switching Hub attached to an RS/6000 processor.

The printer may be located at a maximum distance of 2 Kilometers from the 8260 Multiprotocol Intelligent Switching Hub or RS/6000 processor.

Chapter 17. Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 Printer (4000–ID5/ID6)

This chapter describes Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 printer characteristics. The Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 printer is a channel-attached or LAN-attached, continuous-forms printer that uses a laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 1,002 ipm (impressions per minute). The Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 printer use the Advanced Function Common Control Unit (AFCCU) based on RISC technology, which provides as standard the Advanced Function Image and Graphics (AFIG) feature and the Decompression Performance Enhancement (DPE) feature.

The Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 printer also have 600 pels-per-inch resolution and the Print Quality Enhancement (PQE) function, which smooths edges on diagonal lines, protects fine details, improves the fidelity of images, and allows for adjustment of the boldness of text and the darkness of images.



Figure 35. Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 Printer

Table 76 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 printer.

Table 76. Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams | IPDS |
| Form type | Continuous |
| Number of input bins | Up to 16 inch (406 mm) stack of paper (box) |
| Number of output bins | Up to 14 inch (356 mm) stack of paper |
| Finisher attachment | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing *With either RPQ 8B4013 or 8B4018 installed | yes* |
| Duplex printing | yes |
| Color *With the IBM 4005 Infoprint Hi-Lite Color printer attached ² | yes* |
| Adjust print-quality levels | yes |
| Printhead resolution | 480 dpi 600 dpi |

Table 76. Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | |
| inches per second | 46 |
| inches per minute | 2,760 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ² | |
| 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 324 |
| 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | 648 |
| 2–up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | 501 |
| 2–up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | 1,002 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | |
| mm per second | 1168 |
| mm per minute | 70,104 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ² | |
| 1–up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 333 |
| 1–up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | 666 |
| 2–up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | 472 |
| 2–up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | 944 |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ³ | |
| Letter: 1–up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 16,000,000 duplex |
| Letter: 2–up portrait (11 inches long) | 24,600,000 duplex |
| A4: 1–up landscape (210 mm long) | 16,200,000 duplex |
| A4: 2–up portrait (297 mm long) | 23,000,000 duplex |
| <p>1. The Infoprint 4005 Hi-Lite Color post-processor provides a high-speed, high-quality, all-points-addressable (APA) color printing system to complement the industry-leading quality and reliability the IBM Infoprint 4000 ID1/ID2 Wide or Wide Duplex printers (240 dpi models). Visit the IBM Printing Systems Inter page at http://www.ibm.com/printers for more information about the Infoprint 4005.</p> <p>2. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>3. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | |

Printable Area

The printable area depends on the size of the form being used. The Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 printer can print from perforation to perforation when using roll forms. However, when printing on folded forms, the printing may be degraded in areas near a folded perforation, an internal perforation, or any cut in the form because of the “tenting” (*fold memory*) of the form.

Figure 36 on page 97 shows examples of the printable areas of a standard, letter-size roll form for a Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 printer. Notice that the media origin is located in different corners for wide and narrow forms. Although the maximum printable area for narrow forms is 8.5 by 17 inches, and the maximum printable area for wide forms is 17 by 17 inches, the examples show the printable area for letter-size forms.

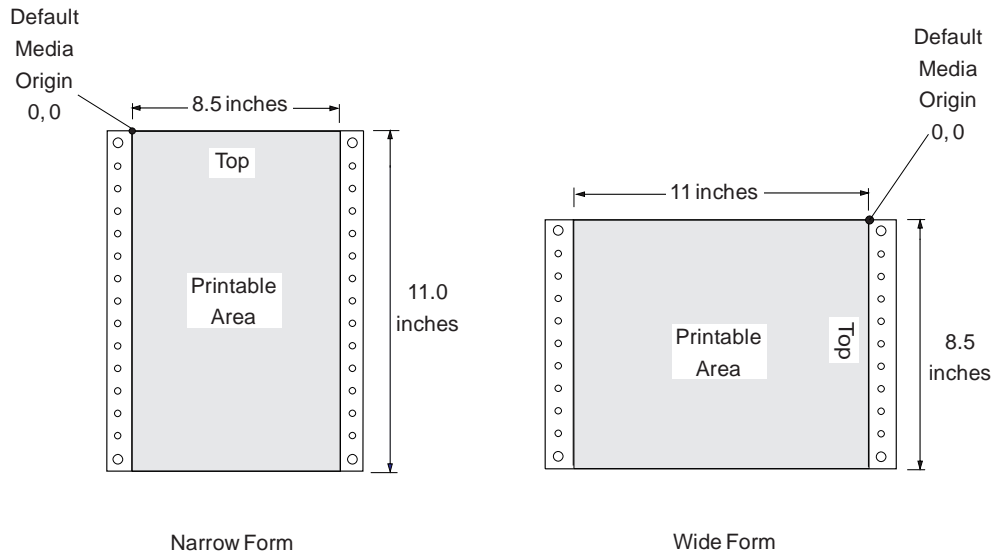


Figure 36. Recommended Printable Areas on the Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 Printer. These are the recommended printable areas on 9.5 by 11-inch (narrow) and 18 by 8.5-inch (wide) roll forms.

Figure 37 and Figure 38 on page 98 show examples of the recommended printable areas for folded forms for a Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 printer. Notice that the media origin is located in different corners for wide and narrow forms. The recommended printable area for the narrow form is 8.5 by 10.34 inches for text, OCR, or bar code data and 8.5 by 10.0 inches for images or solid-fill data. The recommended printable area for the wide form is 11 by 7.84 inches for text, OCR, or bar code data and 11 by 7.5 for images or solid-fill data. The printer can print to the perforation on the leading and trailing edges of the form; however, the print quality within 0.33 inch of the perforation may be degraded.

FOR TEXT, OCR, AND BAR CODES

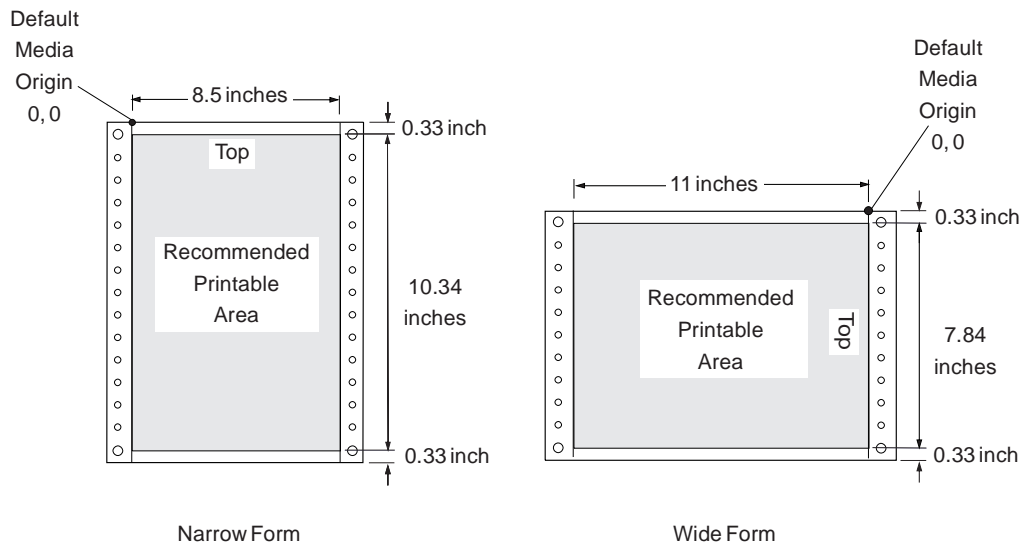


Figure 37. Folded Forms on the Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 Printer. These are the recommended printable areas on 9.5 by 11-inch (narrow) and 12 by 8.5-inch (wide) folded forms for printing text, OCR, and bar code data.

FOR SOLIDFILL AND IMAGES

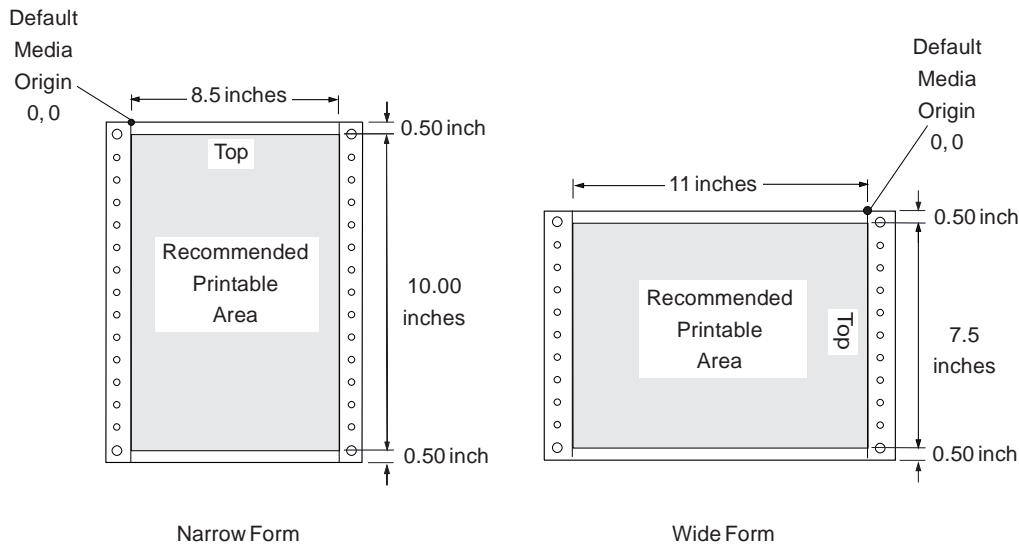


Figure 38. Folded Forms on the Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 Printer. These are the recommended printable areas on 9.5 by 11-inch (narrow) and 12 by 8.5-inch (wide) folded forms for printing solid-fill data and images.

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 printer accepts the following media:

Media types:

Preprinted or blank fanfold forms, roll-feed paper, some labels

Media widths:

Simplex

8 inches to 18 inches (203 mm to 457 mm)

Duplex

9 inches to 18 inches (229 mm to 457 mm)

Media lengths:

3 inches to 14 inches (76 mm to 356 mm) standard stacker; up to 28 inches (711 mm) with post-processing and Infoprint

Media weights:

16 lb. to 28 lb. (60 gsm to 105 gsm) dual simplex; 18 lb. to 28 lb. (68 gsm to 105 gsm) duplex

Attachments

The InfoPrint 4000-ID5/ID6 supports a maximum of two attachments. These attachments can be:

- ESCON channel
- System/370 parallel channel
- Token Ring (TCP/IP)
- FDDI (TCP/IP)

The two attachments may be the same (e.g., 2 ESCON channels), or mixed (eg., 1 ESCON and 1 Token-Ring). The exception is that the printer can have only 1 TCP/IP attachment of any flavor. You cannot have 2 Token-Ring or 2 FDDI attachments, or a combination of 1 Token-Ring or 1 FDDI attachments.

When printing in duplex configuration, only one attachment can be active at a time. If both attachments are to the same system, or to a tightly-coupled system, and the attachments are of the same type (example, both are ESCON or both are parallel channel), then switching between the two attachments can be performed dynamically by the host system. If the attachments or host differ, or the hosts are not

tightly-coupled, then the switch must be performed manually by the operator. The printer must be disabled from the current system and attachment before it can be enabled to the other attachment.

System/370 Parallel Channel

System/370 parallel channel attachment is supported on PSF/MVS, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE printing environments. For S/370 parallel channel attachment, a control unit position on a S/370 parallel block multiplexer channel is required on an IBM 3090™ or ES/9000™ processor. The following processors are also supported for S370 parallel channel attachments, S/390 Parallel Enterprise Server, and the S/390 Multiprise 2000 servers. Attachment is also supported via the 9034 ESCON Converter Model 1.

ESCON Channel

ESCON channel is supported on PSF/MVS, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE printing environments. The IBM InfoPrint 4000 may be attached natively to IBM ESCON channels (3090-J, 9021, 9121, 9221, 9672, 2003). Attachment is also supported via the 9032/9033 ESCON Directors and 9036 ESCON Remote Channel Extender model 1 and model 2.

Token-Ring (TCP/IP) Attachment

Token-Ring (TCP/IP) attachment is supported on PSF for OS/2 and PSF for AIX printing environments along with selected RS/6000 and AS/400 models. The Infoprint 4000 is connected to the host Token-Ring through the IBM Token-Ring cabling via the Token Ring High-performance adapter, which is contained in the AFCCU. The control unit can be attached to either a 16Mbit/sec or a 4Mbit/sec Token-Ring LAN. The TCP/IP Token-Ring Attachment will attach to the following devices:

- 8228 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to an AS/400 or RS/6000 processor
- 8230 Token Ring Network Controller Access attached to an AS/400 or RS/6000 processor
- 8228 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3174, 3745, 3725, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor
- 8230 Token Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3174, 3745, 3725, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor

The printer may be located at a maximum distance of 100 meters (333 ft) from the 8228 Multistation Access Unit or 8230 Controlled Access Unit.

The distance between the 8228 Multistation Access Units can be increased with either the 8220 or 8219 Optical Fiber Repeater.

- Installation Instructions are provided with the feature.

FDDI (TCP/IP)

FDDI (TCP/IP) attachment is supported on PFS for AIX printing environments for selected RS/6000 models. The 4000 is connected to the host FDDI through FDDI 62.5/125 multi-mode fiber cabling using SC connectors via the FDDI Single Station adapter, which is contained in the AFCCU. The FDDI (TCP/IP) attachment will attach to the following devices:

- Directly to RS/6000
- 8260 Multiprotocol Intelligent Switching Hub attached to an RS/6000 processor.

The printer may be located at a maximum distance of 2 Kilometers from the 8260 Multiprotocol Intelligent Switching Hub or RS/6000 processor.

Chapter 18. InfoColor 70 Printer (3170-002)

This section describes the InfoColor 70 printer characteristics. The InfoColor 70 printer is a 600 dpi, token-ring or Ethernet, continuous-forms printer that uses electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 70 impressions per minute (ipm) in duplex mode. The InfoColor 70 printer has a 12.5 inch wide paper path with a 12 inch wide print width, which permits printing of two 8.5 x 11 inch or two ISO A4 pages on a single side of a sheet.



Figure 39. InfoColor 70 Printer

Table 77 summarizes the printer characteristics for the InfoColor 70 printers.

Table 77. InfoColor 70 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| Print technology | Electrophotographic |
| Datastreams | PostScript Level 2 |
| Form type | Continuous |
| Number of input bins | 1 standard |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard |
| Manual forms feed | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | yes |

Table 77. InfoColor 70 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Color | yes |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dpi |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | |
| inches per second | 4.8 |
| inches per minute | 289 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ¹ | |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 35 |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | 70 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | n/a |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | |
| mm per second | 122.5 |
| mm per minute | 7,350 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ¹ | |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 35 |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | 70 |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | n/a |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ² | |
| Letter: 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 680,000 duplex |
| Letter: 2-up landscape (11 inches long) | n/a |
| A4: 1-up landscape (210 mm long) | 700,000 duplex |
| A4: 2-up landscape (297 mm long) | n/a |
| <p>1. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>2. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | |

Printable Area

The InfoColor 70 cannot print in certain unprintable areas near the edges of the form.

Figure 40 on page 103 shows an example of the printable area of a form. The printable area shown is 8.17 by 10.66 inches.

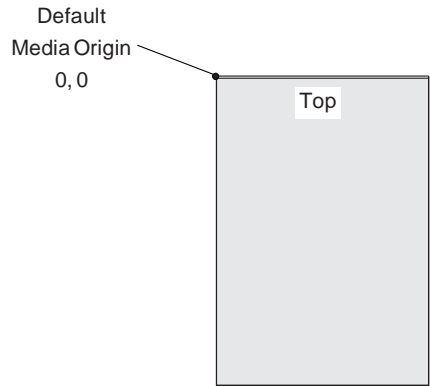


Figure 40. Printable Area in IPDS Mode on the InfoColor 70

Media Specifications

The InfoColor 70 accepts the following media:

Media types:

Web-fed roll, coated or uncoated

Media widths:

8.27 inches to 12.6 inches (210 mm to 320 mm)

Media lengths:

Up to 17 inches (430 mm) stacked output

Media weights:

60 gsm to 200 gsm, 22 lb. to 74 lb. cover, 16 lb. to 52 lb. bond, 41 lb. to 135 lb. text

Attachments

The controller attaches to a LAN through either an Ethernet or Token Ring Adapter:

- Token-Ring attachment (TCP/IP) option
- Ethernet attachment (TCP/IP, IPX, EtherTalk)

Print Drivers

Two Utilities Diskettes are included with the IBM InfoColor 70. These diskettes are for Macintosh and the IBM Personal Computer, and contain PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files and a Printer Description File (PDF) for QuarkXpress. Also included is the set registration length QuarkXpress extension that is used to adjust crop marks.

Chapter 19. Infoprint Color 100 Printer (3170-003)

This section describes the Infoprint Color 100 printer characteristics. The Infoprint Color 100 is a 600 dpi token-ring and Ethernet, continuous-forms printer that uses laser and electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 100 impressions per minute (ipm) in duplex mode. The Infoprint Color 100 has an 19 inch wide paper path with a 18.875 inch wide print width, which permits printing of two 8.5 x 11 inch or two ISO A4 pages on a single side of a sheet.



Figure 41. Infoprint Color 100 Printer

Table 78 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint Color 100 printers.

Table 78. InfoColor 100 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| Print technology | Electrophotographic |
| Datastreams | PostScript Level 2 |
| Form type | Continuous |
| Number of input bins | 1 standard |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard |
| Manual forms feed | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | yes |

Table 78. InfoColor 100 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Color | yes |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dpi |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | |
| inches per second | 4.8 |
| inches per minute | 289 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ¹ | |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 34 |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | 68 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | 52 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | 105 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | |
| mm per second | 122.5 |
| mm per minute | 7,350 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ¹ | |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 34 |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | 68 |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | 52 |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | 105 |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ² | |
| Letter: 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 680,000 duplex |
| Letter: 2-up landscape (11 inches long) | 1,050,000 duplex |
| A4: 1-up landscape (210 mm long) | 700,000 duplex |
| A4: 2-up landscape (297 mm long) | 1,000,000 duplex |
| <p>1. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>2. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | |

Printable Area

The Infoprint Color 100 accepts paper from 8.17 to 12 inches in width. For 12 inch wide paper the printer the unprintable area of the form is .05 inches on either side of the paper and .083 inch from either end of the page. Figure 42 on page 107 shows an example of the printable area of a form 12 inches wide by 17 inches long.

Note: Do not print edge-to-edge on paper that is less than 12 inches in width.

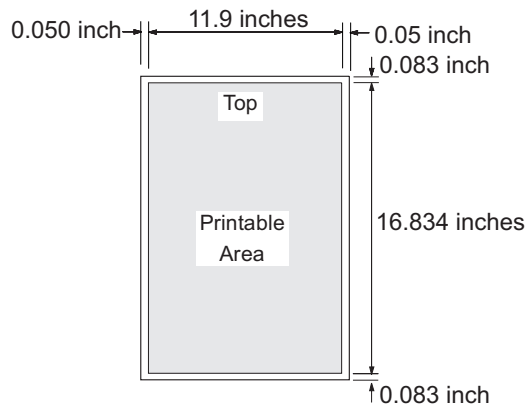


Figure 42. Printable Area on the Infoprint Color 100 Printer

Media Specifications

The Infoprint Color 100 accepts the following media:

Media types:

Web-fed roll, coated or uncoated

Media widths:

19.7 inches to 20 inches (500 to 508 mm)

Media lengths:

11 inches to 39.37 inches (279 mm to 1,000 mm)

Media weights:

60 gsm to 250 gsm, 22 lb. to 92 lb. cover, 16 lb. to 66 lb. bond, 41 lb. to 169 lb. text

Attachments

The controller attaches to a LAN through the standard 10/100 BaseT Ethernet port, or through the optional Token Ring or Ethernet Adapters.

The 10/100 BaseT Ethernet port is standard on all InfoPrint Color 100 printers. This connection provides 10Mb/sec or 100Mb/sec connectivity to 10BaseT or 100BaseT Ethernet LANs, including the ability to automatically sense the speed at the hub port.

Print Drivers

Two utilities diskettes are included with the IBM InfoPrint Color 100. These diskettes are for Macintosh, Windows 95, and Windows 3.1X, and contain PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files, a Printer Description File (PDF) for QuarkXpress, and ICC color profiles. Also included is the set registration length QuarkXpress extension that is used to adjust crop marks.

Chapter 20. Infoprint Color 130 Printer (3170-004)

This section describes the Infoprint Color 130 printer characteristics. The Infoprint Color 130 printer is a 600 dpi token-ring and Ethernet, continuous-forms printer that uses electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 130 impressions per minute (ipm) in duplex mode. The Infoprint Color 130 printer has an 19 inch wide paper path with a 18.875 inch wide print width, which permits printing of two 8.5 x 11 inch or two ISO A4 pages on a single side of a sheet.



Figure 43. Infoprint Color 130 printer

Table 79 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint Color 130 printers.

Table 79. InfoColor 130 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams | PostScript Level 2, Level 3 compatible, and PDF |
| Form type | Continuous |
| Number of input bins | 1 standard |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard |
| Manual forms feed | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | yes |
| Color | yes |
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |

Table 79. InfoColor 130 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Printhead resolution | 600 dpi |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | |
| inches per second | 6.3 |
| inches per minute | 378 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ¹ | |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 44 |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | 88 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | 68 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | 136 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | |
| mm per second | 160 |
| mm per minute | 9,600 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ¹ | |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 44 |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | 138 |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | n/a |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ² | |
| Letter: 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 680,000 duplex |
| Letter: 2-up landscape (11 inches long) | 1,050,000 duplex |
| A4: 1-up landscape (210 mm long) | 700,000 duplex |
| A4: 2-up landscape (297 mm long) | 1,000,000 duplex |
| <p>1. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>2. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | |

Printable Area

The Infoprint Color 130 Printer accepts paper from 8.17 to 12 inches in width. For 12 inch wide paper the printer the unprintable area of the form is .05 inches on either side of the paper and .083 inch from either end of the page. Figure 44 on page 111 shows an example of the printable area of a form 12 inches wide by 17 inches long.

Note: Do not print edge-to-edge on paper that is less than 12 inches in width.

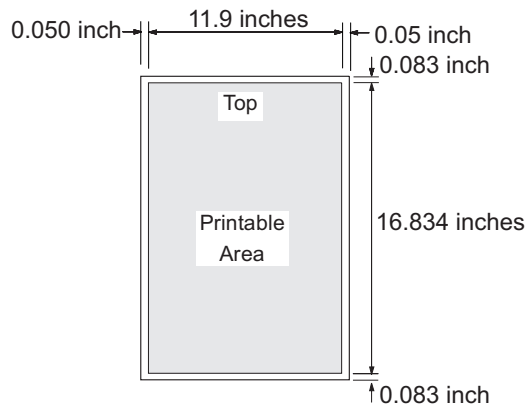


Figure 44. Printable Area on the Infoprint Color 130 Printer

Media Specifications

The Infoprint Color 130 accepts the following media:

Media types:

Web-fed roll, coated or uncoated

Media widths:

19.7 inches to 20 inches (500 to 508 mm)

Media lengths:

11 inches to 39.37 inches (279 mm to 1,000 mm)

Media weights:

60 gsm to 240 gsm, 22 lb. to 92 lb. cover, 16 lb. to 64 lb. bond, 41 lb. to 169 lb. text

Attachments

The IBM Infoprint Color 130 must be attached to either a Token Ring or Ethernet LAN.

The controller can attach the printer to the LAN through the 10/100 BaseT adapter that is standard, or through one of the optional adapters.

The standard 10/100 BaseT Ethernet port provides 10Mb/sec or 100 Mb/sec connectivity to 10BaseT or 100BaseT Ethernet LANs, including the ability to automatically sense the speed of the hub port.

A maximum of one of the following optional adapters are available on the Model 004.

- Token-Ring Adapter
- Ethernet 10/100 BaseT Adapter
- Gigabit Ethernet

Print Drivers

Two utilities diskettes are included with the IBM Infoprint Color 130. These diskettes are for Macintosh, and Windows 95. The diskettes contain PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files, and ICC color profiles.

Chapter 21. Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer (3170–005)

This section describes the Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer characteristics. The Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer is a 600 dpi token-ring, continuous-forms printer that uses electrophotographic technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 130 impressions per minute (ipm) in duplex mode. The Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer has an 19 inch wide paper path with a 18.875 inch wide print width, which permits printing of two 8.5 x 11 inch or two ISO A4 pages on a single side of a sheet. The Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer uses the Advanced Function Common Control Unit (AFCCU).



Figure 45. Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer

Table 80 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printers.

Table 80. InfoColor 130 Plus Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| Print technology | Laser |
| Datastreams | IPDS |
| Form type | Continuous |
| Number of input bins | 1 standard |
| Number of output bins | 1 standard |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | yes |
| Color | yes |

Table 80. InfoColor 130 Plus Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Adjust print-quality levels | no |
| Printhead resolution | 600 dpi |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | |
| inches per second | 6.3 |
| inches per minute | 378 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ² | |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 44 |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | 138 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | 68 |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | 136 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | |
| mm per second | 160 |
| mm per minute | 9,600 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ³ | |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 44 |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | 138 |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | n/a |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ² | |
| Letter: 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 680,000 duplex |
| Letter: 2-up landscape (11 inches long) | 1,050,000 duplex |
| A4: 1-up landscape (210 mm long) | 700,000 duplex |
| A4: 2-up landscape (297 mm long) | 1,000,000 duplex |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Infoprint Color 130 Plus can print PostScript and PDF when used with Infoprint Manager. 2. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate. 3. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis. | |

Printable Area

The Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer accepts paper from 8.17 to 12 inches in width. For 12 inch wide paper the printer the unprintable area of the form is .05 inches on either side of the paper and .083 inch from either end of the page. Figure 46 on page 115 shows an example of the printable area of a form 12 inches wide by 17 inches long.

Note: Do not print edge-to-edge on paper that is less than 12 inches in width.

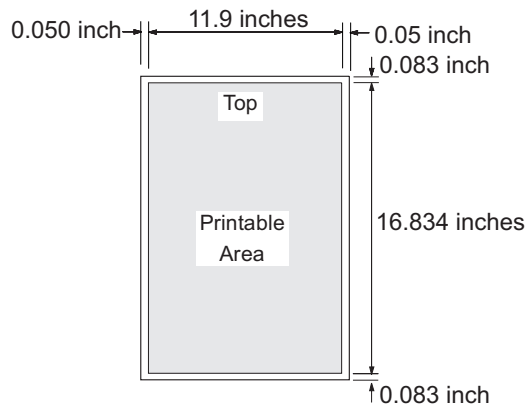


Figure 46. Printable Area on the Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer

Media Specifications

The Infoprint Color 130 Plus accepts the following media:

Media types:

Web-fed roll, coated or uncoated

Media widths:

19.7 inches to 20 inches (500 to 508 mm)

Media lengths:

6 inches to 39.37 inches (150 mm to 1,000 mm)

Media weights:

60 gsm to 250 gsm, 22 lb. to 92 lb. cover, 16 lb. to 64 lb. bond, 41 lb. to 169 lb. text

Attachments

S/390 Host Attachment

At least one of the following adapters must be used to attach the Infoprint Color 130 Plus Model 005 to a host System/390 for PSF for OS/390.

- ESCON Channel
- FICON Channel

Gigabit Ethernet Infoprint Manager Attachment

Gigabit Ethernet must be used to attach the Infoprint Color 130 Plus to an RS/6000 Infoprint Manager System.

Host Software

A host attachment to either Infoprint Manager for AIX running on an RS/6000 and/or a S/390 running PSF for OS/390 (5655-B17), is required. To transform PostScript or PDF for printing on an Infoprint Color 130 Plus, Infoprint Manager for AIX is always required.

Printer Attachment Rules

The controller can attach the printer to the RS/6000 running Infoprint Manager through an Ethernet Gigabit adapter and to a S/390 running PSF for OS/390 through either an ESCON or FICON channel.

A maximum of two of these adapters (Gigabit, FICON, or ESCON) can be installed on the 3170-005. Only one of the Gigabit or FICON adapters may be installed. Two ESCON adapters are allowed. Possible combinations include:

- 1 Ethernet Gigabit Adapter
- 1 FICON Adapter
- 2 ESCON
- 1 ESCON and One FICON
- 1 Ethernet Gigabit and 1 ESCON
- 1 Ethernet Gigabit and 1 FICON

Infoprint Color 130 Plus Datastream Support

The following datastreams are supported on an Infoprint Color 130 Plus attached to a host S/390 with PSF for OS/390.

- AFP with Infoprint Color Image (FS45)
- AFP line data
- EPS embedded or referenced in the AFP datastream
- Single-page PDF embedded or referenced in the AFP datastream

The following datastreams are supported on an Infoprint Color 130 Plus attached to an Infoprint Manager for AIX System.

- All of the datastreams shown above for a S/390 with PSF for OS/390
- GIF, TIFF, and JPEG (JFIF) images which have been transformed to an Infoprint Color Image in the Infoprint Manager System
- PostScript 3 which has been transformed to an Infoprint Color Image in the Infoprint Manager System
- PDF 1.3 which has been transformed to an Infoprint Color Image in the Infoprint Manager System

A stand-alone version of the image conversion program is provided for the AIX and Windows NT platforms. This program can be used to convert TIFF, GIF, and JPEG (JFIF) images to Infoprint Color Images (FS45) in batch mode. The resulting Infoprint Color Image can then be stored in an Infoprint Manager or OS/390 resource library, embedded or referenced in an AFP (MO:DCA-P) datastream, and printed using PSF for OS/390 or Infoprint Manager for AIX.

Software Requirements

Either PSF for OS/390 (5655-B17) V3R2 or Infoprint Manager for AIX V3R2 (5765-E42) must be installed on a host server to support Infoprint Color 130 Plus.

Infoprint Manager for AIX requires APAR IY8860 and the Infoprint Color 130 Plus PRPQ #8A8091.

Both PSF for OS/390 and Infoprint Manager for AIX support printing AFP (MO:DCA-P) datastreams with the new Infoprint Color Image (FS45) objects. Both also support printing AFP data streams with Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) objects or single-page PDF objects. These objects must reside in a S/390 container library, in an AIX resource library, or in the resource group at the beginning of the AFP print file.

Only Infoprint Manager for AIX supports printing PostScript or PDF files directly using a server-based AFP transform. The AFP Upload facility can be used to upload the AFP file generated by this transform to a S/390 for printing by PSF for OS/390.

In addition to workstation-based application generators, the following products can be used to create color AFP data.

- IBM Page Printer Formatting Aid/370 R1 (5688-190) with APAR PQ 37413.
- The Page Printer Formatting Aid feature of Infoprint Manager for AIX V3 with APAR PQ37413
- IBM Overlay Generation Language/370 V1R1 (5688-191)
- The AFP Windows Driver

An AFP Viewer that includes support for Infoprint Color Image (FS45), Encapsulated PostScript, and PDF objects is distributed with the printer. This viewer allows application developers to view Infoprint Color 130 Plus datastreams from a workstation. This AFP Viewer can be installed on up to 10 developer workstations.

A utility program to convert JPEG, GIF, and TIFF images to Infoprint Color Images (FS45) is also distributed with the Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer.

APARS for Infoprint Color 130 Plus support are required for most of the above programs. Contact the IBM Supportline for information.

Chapter 22. 4230 Printer (4230)

This section describes 4230 Printer's characteristics. The 4230 Printer is a tabletop, serial, dot-matrix, impact printer that prints text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 600 characters per second, depending on the model and print quality selected.



Figure 47. 4230 Printer

Table 81 summarizes the printer characteristics for the 4230 Printer.

Table 81. 4230 Impact Printers

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate: characters per second (cps) | 375 cps (-xx1) 480 cps (-xx2) 600 cps (-xx3) |
| Print technology | Impact Dot Matrix |
| Datastreams | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS |
| Form type | Continuous Cut-Sheet |
| Continuous forms input paths | 1 standard |
| Continuous forms output paths | 1 standard |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | yes |
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | no |
| Color | no |

Table 81. 4230 Impact Printers (continued)

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Operator-adjustable forms | yes |
| Printhead resolution (pels-per-inch) | 144 x 144 |
| Maximum characters per second (cps) per month (duty cycles) | 16,000,000 |

Printable Area

The size of the printable area must be set using a printer configuration option. If the defined printable area is not large enough to contain the page of data, a data-check exception (position check) occurs.

Media Specifications

The 4230 Printer accepts the following media:

Media types:

Operator-changeable forms modules, continuous forms up to 6 parts, cutsheet, document-on-demand/zero tear-off

Media widths:

3 inches to 15 inches (76 mm to 381 mm)

Media lengths:

3 inches to 14 inches (76 mm to 356 mm) continuous forms, 5 inches to 14 inches (127 mm to 356 mm) cutsheet

Attachments

IBM 4230 Models 101, 102, 111, and 1S2 Impact Matrix Printers

The IBM 4230 Models 101, 102, 111, and 1S2 Impact Matrix Printer may attach to systems as follows:

- The System/36 - Workstation Control Unit, AS/400 system on a Twinaxial Workstation port, the 5294 Control Unit - Workstation port (feature #3601 required) and 5X94 Control Units.

IBM 4230 Model 201 Impact Matrix Printer

The IBM 4230 Model 201 Impact Matrix Printer may attach to systems as follows:

- The 3174 Control Unit - Terminal port (using Release A5.4, Release B4.0), or the 3274 Control Unit on a Category A terminal port (using Rel. C49.0 and Rel. D65.1), the 3276 Control Unit - Terminal port, or the 43X1 Processor Display/Printer Adapter or Workstation Adapter, the ES/9370 Processor Workstation Controller (feature #6020; using Release 5.1) a 9371 Micro Channel 370 3270 Adapter (feature #6120 -VM/VSE only) or ES9000 - 9221 Workstation Subsystem Controller.

IBM 4230 Models 202 and 211 Impact Matrix Printers

The IBM 4230 Model 202 and 211 Impact Matrix Printers may attach to systems as follows:

- **IPDS Mode:** The 3174 Control Unit - Terminal port (using Release A5.4, Release B4.0) or the 3274 Control Unit on a Category A port (using Release D65.1; PTR 2893 for local non-SNA), the 4361 Processor - Workstation Adapter port (feature #9261), ES/9370 Processor Workstation Controller (feature #6020; using Release 5.1), a 9371 Micro Channel 370 3270 Adapter (feature #6120 -VM/VSE only) or ES9000 - 9221 Workstation Subsystem Controller.
- **Non-IPDS Mode:** The 3174 Control Unit - Terminal port (using Release A5.4, Release B4.0), or the 3274 Control Unit on a Category A terminal port (using Rel. C49.0 and Rel. D65.1), the 3276 Control Unit - Terminal port, or the 43X1 Processor Display/Printer Adapter or Workstation Adapter, the ES/9370 Processor Workstation Controller (feature #6020; using Release 5.1) a 9371 Micro Channel 370 3270 Adapter (feature #6120 -VM/VSE only) or ES9000 - 9221 Workstation Subsystem Controller.

IBM 4230 Model 2S2 Impact Matrix Printer

The IBM 4230 Model 2S2 Impact Matrix Printer may attach to systems as follows:

- The 3174 Control Unit - Terminal port (using Release A5.4, Release B4.0), or the 3274 Control Unit on a Category A terminal port (using Rel. C49.0 and Rel. D65.1), the 3276 Control Unit - Terminal port, or the 43X1 Processor Display/Printer Adapter or Workstation Adapter, the ES/9370 Processor Workstation Controller (feature #6020; using Release 5.1) a 9371 Micro Channel 370 3270 Adapter (feature #6120 -VM/VSE only) or ES9000 - 9221 Workstation Subsystem Controller.

IBM 4230 Models 4I3, 4S3, 5I3, and 5S3 Impact Matrix Printers

The RS-232C serial interface will attach to:

- IBM AS/400 ASCII workstation controller
- 3174 controller via the Asynchronous Emulation Adapter
- RS/6000
- PS/2 computer COMx ports
- LAN Attachment (i.e., Token Ring or Ethernet) via the Novell-certified IBM 4033 LAN adapter and the Intel NetPort
- IBM-compatible PCs utilizing an RS-232C interface

The RS-422A serial interface will attach to:

- RS/6000
- AS/400 ASCII workstation controller

The IBM PC ASCII (CENTRONICS) Parallel interface will attach to:

- RS/6000 workstations, excluding POWERServer 930
- PS/2 computer LPTx ports and to a Token-Ring or Ethernet LAN via one of these computers
- LAN attachment via the Novell-certified IBM 4033 LAN adapter and the Intel NetPort IBM-compatible PC's utilizing the IBM PC ASCII (Centronics) Parallel interface
- AS/400 twinax terminals including 348X, 3477 and 3197
- Coax terminal 3482

The 4230 may attach to systems as follows:

Models 4S3 and 4I3

The System/36 - Workstation Control Unit, AS/400 system on a Twinaxial Workstation port, the 5294 Control Unit - Workstation port (feature code 3601 required when attaching IPDS Model 4I3), the 5394 and 5494 Control Units.

Model 5I3 in IPDS Mode

The 3174 Controller - Terminal port (using Release A5.4 or later, Release B4.0 or later, Release C1.1 or later), or the 3274 Control Unit on a Category A port (using Release D65.1; PTR 2893 for local non-SNA), the 4361 Processor - Workstation Adapter port (feature code 9261), ES/9370 Processor Workstation Controller (feature code 6020; using Release 5.1), a ES/9371 Processor - 3270 Adapter, or ES9000 - 9221 Workstation Subsystem Controller.

Model 5I3 in Non-IPDS Mode, Model 5S3

The 3174 Controller - Terminal port (using Release A5.4 or later, Release B4.0 or later, Release C1.1 or later), or the 3274 Control Unit on a Category A terminal port (using Rel. C49.0 and Rel. D65.1), the 3276 Control Unit - Terminal port, or the 43X1 Processor Display/Printer Adapter or Workstation Adapter, the ES/9370 Processor Workstation Controller (feature #6020; using Release 5.1) a ES/9371 Processor 3270 Adapter, or ES9000 - 9221 Workstation Subsystem Controller.

Fonts

Although the 4230 Printer can print with downloaded symbol sets, the 4230 Printer prints only with single-byte resident symbol sets when driven by PSF.

Because of differences between font technologies, text printed with symbol sets will not have the same appearance as text printed with the raster fonts of the same names.

Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000

Use the font mapping file supplied with Infoprint Manager. Refer to *Working with Fonts* on the *Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000* web page for more information about using fonts.

Infoprint Manager for AIX

Use the font mapping file supplied with Infoprint Manager. Refer to *Infoprint Manager for AIX: Administrator's Guide* for more information about using fonts.

PSF for OS/390

To use the resident raster fonts, the system programmer must identify them to PSF using the APSRMARK utility. Refer to *Print Services Facility for OS/390: Customization* for more information about using resident fonts.

PSF/VM

You cannot print with resident fonts, but you can print with downloaded raster fonts. Refer to *Print Services Facility/VM: System Programming Guide* for more information about using fonts.

PSF/VSE

To use the resident raster fonts, the system programmer must identify them to PSF using the APTRMARK utility. Refer to *Print Services Facility/VSE: System Programming Guide* for more information about using resident fonts.

PSF for AS/400

Refer to *AS/400 Printer Device Programming* for more information about using fonts.

Operator-Adjustable Forms

To align data on preprinted forms, the 4230 Printer operator can adjust the physical top and left margins, which will offset the page image on the printing medium. The horizontal (left margin) adjustment range is from -6.9 mm (-0.27 inches) to +38.35 mm (+1.51 inches). The vertical (top margin) adjustment range is from -30.5 mm (-1.2 inches) to +38.1 mm (+1.5 inches). This adjustment does not affect the size of the valid printable area; however, using this adjustment can produce positioning errors if the horizontal adjustment is too large for the form being used.

Print-Quality Levels

The 4230 Printer allows you to select different levels of print quality. Higher quality corresponds to slower print speeds. To select a print-quality level, use the QUALITY subcommand on the COPYGROUP command in the form definition. To use Fast Draft Quality, you must enable it using a printer configuration menu on the operator panel. Refer to your printer publications on how to do this. If the printer is not configured, all requests to print using Fast Draft will automatically be printed in DP Quality. Specify the values shown in Table 82 on the QUALITY subcommand to get the correct print-quality level.

Table 82. 4230 Printer Print-Quality Selection Values

| Print-Quality Level | Hexadecimal Value Range | Decimal Value Range |
|---------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Reserved | X'00' | |
| Fast Draft Quality | X'01' through X'2A' | 1 through 42 |
| DP Quality | X'2B' through X'55' | 43 through 85 |

Table 82. 4230 Printer Print-Quality Selection Values (continued)

| Print-Quality Level | Hexadecimal Value Range | Decimal Value Range |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| DP Text Quality | X'56' through X'AA' | 86 through 170 |
| NLQ Quality | X'AB' through X'FE' | 171 through 254 |
| Printer Customized Default | X'FF' | 255 |

Not all symbol sets can be printed at all print-quality levels. Table 83 identifies the print-quality levels that can be used for some of the 4230 Printer symbol sets and suggests the name of a corresponding coded font that may be used for each symbol set. Refer to the 4230 Printer publications for a list of 4230 Printer symbol sets.

Table 83. 4230 Printer Symbol Sets and Corresponding Coded Fonts

| Symbol Sets | 4230 Printer Print Quality | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------|---------|--------|
| | Fast Draft | DP | DP text | NLQ |
| APL10 | | X0AE10 | | |
| Courier Bold 10 Pitch | | | X0CB10 | X0CB10 |
| Courier Bold 12 Pitch | | | X0CB12 | X0CB12 |
| Courier Bold 15 Pitch | | | X0CB15 | X0CB15 |
| Courier Double Wide Italic 15 Pitch | | | X0CW15 | X0CW15 |
| Courier Double Wide 15 Pitch | | | X0CD15 | X0CD15 |
| Courier Italic 10 Pitch | | | X0CI10 | X0CI10 |
| Courier Italic 12 Pitch | | | X0CI12 | X0CI12 |
| Courier Italic 15 Pitch | | | X0CI15 | X0CI15 |
| Courier 10 Pitch | | | X0CR10 | X0CR10 |
| Courier 12 Pitch | | | X0CR12 | X0CR12 |
| Courier 15 Pitch | | | X0CR15 | X0CR15 |
| Essay Bold Mixed Pitch | | | X0EBR9 | X0EBR9 |
| Essay Italic Mixed Pitch | | | X0EIR9 | X0EIR9 |
| Essay Standard Mixed Pitch | | | X0ESR9 | X0ESR9 |
| Gothic Bold 10 Pitch | X0GB10 | X0GB10 | | |
| Gothic Bold 12 Pitch | X0GB12 | X0GB12 | | |
| Gothic Italic 12 Pitch | X0GI12 | X0GI12 | | |
| Gothic Text 10 Pitch | X0GT10 | X0GT10 | | |
| Gothic Text 12 Pitch | X0GT12 | X0GT12 | | |
| Gothic Text 15 Pitch | X0GT15 | X0GT15 | | |
| Katakana | X0KN10 | X0KN10 | | |
| OCR-A | | | | X0AOA |
| OCR-B | | | | X0OCRB |

PSF selects symbol sets according to the following hierarchy:

1. If you select a symbol set that matches the print quality specified in the form definition, PSF prints the file.
2. If you select a symbol set but do not specify a print quality, the print quality selected in the printer configuration or the printer default print quality is used.

3. If you select a symbol set that does not match the print quality specified, the printer attempts to print the text using a "best fit" font, which it selects. Some pages may be duplicated, and some information on the page in error may be missing.
4. If you select a symbol set that is not available on the 4230 Printer, PSF does not print the remainder of the file.
5. With PSF for AS/400, if you select a symbol set that is not available on the 4230 Printer, and you specified absolute fidelity, PSF does not print the remainder of the file. If you specified content fidelity, PSF substitutes another symbol set and prints the file.

Printer Capabilities

The capabilities of the 4230 Printer are different from those of most of the other printers supported by PSF in the following ways:

- Differences in the contents of the character sets in the fonts provided by PSF and in the symbol sets resident in the 4230 Printer may result in inconsistent printed output between the two types of fonts.
- Although the 4230 Printer can print with downloaded symbol sets, it uses only resident symbol sets when driven by PSF.
- The PSF for OS/390 and PSF/VSE default fonts specified in the CHARS parameter in the PRINTDEV statement cause errors in which PSF issues messages saying "resource not found". Change or override the CHARS parameter to use a 4230 Printer symbol set.
- The 4230 Printer prints both text and images in only 0° character orientation. All orientations other than 0° are supported for graphics. The 4230 Printer does not support rotated fonts.
- The 4230 Printer prints images with 144-pel resolution.
- The 4230 Printer does not support multiple subgroups within a copy group in a form definition. Printing of multiple copies of individual pages within a subgroup is not supported.

Chapter 23. 4232 Impact Printer (4232)

This section describes 4232 Impact Printer's characteristics. The 4232 Impact Printer is a tabletop, serial, dot-matrix, impact printer that prints text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 480 characters per second, depending on the model and print quality selected.



Figure 48. 4232 Impact Printer

Table 84 summarizes the printer characteristics for the 4232 Impact printer.

Table 84. 4232 Impact Printers

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate: characters per second (cps) | 600 cps |
| Print technology | Impact Dot Matrix |
| Datastreams | PPDS, Epson, ASCII |
| Form type | Continuous Cut-Sheet |
| Continuous forms input paths | 1 standard |
| Continuous forms output paths | 1 standard |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | yes |
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | no |
| Color | no |
| Operator-adjustable forms | yes |

Table 84. 4232 Impact Printers (continued)

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Printhead resolution (pels-per-inch) | 144 x 144 |
| Maximum characters per second (cps) per month (duty cycles) | 16,000,000 |

Printable Area

The size of the printable area must be set using a printer configuration option. If the defined printable area is not large enough to contain the page of data, a data-check exception (position check) occurs.

Media Specifications

The 4232 Impact Printer accepts the following media:

Media types:

Operator-changeable forms modules, continuous forms up to 6 parts, cutsheet, document-on-demand/zero tear-off

Media widths:

3 inches to 15 inches (76 mm to 381 mm)

Media lengths:

3 inches to 14 inches (76 mm to 356 mm) continuous forms, 5 inches to 14 inches (127 mm to 356 mm) cutsheet

Attachments

The RS-232C serial interface will attach to:

- IBM AS/400 ASCII workstation controller
- 3174 controller via the Asynchronous Emulation Adapter
- RS/6000
- PS/2 computer COMx ports and to a Token-Ring or Ethernet LAN via one of these computers
- LAN Attachment (i.e., Token Ring or Ethernet) via the Novell-certified IBM 4033 LAN adapter
- IBM-compatible PCs utilizing an RS-232C interface

The RS-422A serial interface will attach to:

- RS/6000
- AS/400 ASCII workstation controller

The IBM PC ASCII (Centronics) Parallel interface will attach to:

- RS/6000 workstations, excluding POWERserver 930
- PS/2 computer LPTx ports and to a Token-Ring or Ethernet LAN via one of these computers
- LAN attachment via the Novell-certified IBM 4033 LAN adapter
- IBM-compatible PCs utilizing the IBM PC ASCII (Centronics) Parallel interface
- AS/400 twinax terminals including 348X, 3477 and 3197
- Coax terminal 3482

IBM 4232 Impact Matrix Printer ASCII Software Support

The IBM 4232-302 can use the IBM Personal Printer Data Stream (PPDS)* in a Proprinter II (4202) emulation when attached to Serial (RS-232C/RS-422A) interfaces or the IBM PC ASCII (Centronics) Parallel interface. 4224-emulation may also be available. In 4224-emulation mode, the 4232 will support PPDS bar code and vector graphics commands. For more information, reference 4224 RPQ 8V0428 or the *4232 Printer User's Guide Models 102 and 202*.

The following systems support the 4232-302:

Table 85. Caption. Description

| System | Software - Minimum Level | Data Stream/Emulation |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IBM PS/2 | OS/2 1.1 OS/2 LAN Server 1.0 OS/2 Extended Services 1.0 OS/2 Communications Manager/2 1.0 DOS 3.3 Microsoft Windows 3.0 PC Support/400 W/S Function V2.2 | PPDS/4202 or 4224 PPDS/4202 or 4224 PPDS/4202 PPDS/4202 PPDS/4202 or 4224 PPDS/4202 PPDS/4202 |
| IBM RS/6000 | AIX Version 3.1.5 | PPDS/4202 or 4224 |
| IBM AS/400 | OS/400 V2.3 Host Print Transform OS/400 V2.2 | PPDS/4202 PPDS/4202 |

IBM 4232-302 IBM OS/2, IBM AIX, and Novell NetWare LAN Operating System Support via the IBM 4033 LAN adapter

The IBM 4232-302 will support the following via attachment to the IBM 4033 LAN adapter:

Table 86. Caption. Description

| System | Software - Minimum Level | Data Stream |
|------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| Token Ring | OS/2 LAN Server 1.2, 1.3 | PPDS |
| Ethernet | OS/2 LAN Server 1.2, 1.3 | PPDS |
| Token Ring | IBM AIX Ver. 3.1.5 | PPDS |
| Ethernet | IBM AIX Ver. 3.1.5 | PPDS |
| Token Ring | Novell NetWare 2.2, 3.11 | PPDS |
| Ethernet | Novell NetWare 2.2, 3.11 | PPDS |

Operator-Adjustable Forms

To align data on preprinted forms, the 4232 Impact Printer operator can adjust the physical top and left margins, which will offset the page image on the printing medium. The horizontal (left margin) adjustment range is from -6.9 mm (-0.27 inches) to +38.35 mm (+1.51 inches). The vertical (top margin) adjustment range is from -30.5 mm (-1.2 inches) to +38.1 mm (+1.5 inches). This adjustment does not affect the size of the valid printable area; however, using this adjustment can produce positioning errors if the horizontal adjustment is too large for the form being used.

Chapter 24. 4247 Printer (4247)

This section describes 4247 Printer's characteristics. The 4247 Printer is a tabletop, serial, impact, matrix printer that prints text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 700 characters per second, depending on the model and print quality selected.



Figure 49. 4247 Printer

Table 87 summarizes the printer characteristics for the 4247 Printer.

Table 87. 4247 Printer

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate: characters per second (cps) | 700 cps (A00/001) 400 cps (002) |
| Print technology | Impact Dot Matrix |
| Datastreams | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, IPDS, DSE, SCS |
| Form type | Continuous Cut-Sheet |
| Continuous forms input paths | 3 standard 3 optional |
| Continuous forms output paths | 1 standard |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed *An Automatic Sheet Feed Device is available | yes* |
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | no |
| Color | no |

Table 87. 4247 Printer (continued)

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Operator-adjustable forms | yes |
| Printhead resolution (pels-per-inch) | 144 x 144 |
| Maximum characters per second (cps) per month (duty cycles) | 20,000,000 |

Printable Area

The size of the printable area is set using a printer configuration option. If the defined printable area is not large enough to contain the page of data, a data-check exception (position check) occurs.

Selecting the Printing Medium

This section describes how to select the various available paper sources on the 4247-001 Printer for Coaxial and Twinaxial applications, using the SCS or IPDS support in the printer.

Note: For the ASCII data streams supported over the parallel port, select the same paper source as on the 4247 Model A00 Printer.

Specifying the Source of the Medium for a 4247-001 Printer

Although the 4247-001 printer is a continuous forms printer, options can enable it to support a second continuous forms source, or an automatic cut sheet feeder source, or both. The maximum possible paper sources for the 4247-001 are:

Front Continuous forms paper fed through the front of the printer. This uses either the Front Push, Rear Pull, or Push-Pull tractor configurations.

Rear Continuous forms paper fed through the rear of the printer. This is only with the Rear Push tractor configuration.

ASF Bin 1

Automatic Sheet Feeder Bin 1

ASF Bin 2

Automatic Sheet Feeder Bin 2

ASF Bin 3

Automatic Sheet Feeder Bin 3

Manual

Manual cut sheet

Identifying the Paper Source (Media IDs)

The method you use to select the manual cut sheet feed varies, depending on whether the printer is IPDS or SCS, or attached by Twinaxial or Coax. More information follows in the specific sections about PSF, AS/400, and GDDM.

Selecting Paper Sources Compatible with Other Printers

Many non-impact cutsheet printers, 4230, or 42 x 4 printers with an automatic sheet feed (ASF) option have existing applications that use media ID values 1-3, specified in an AFP Form Definition, or in job control language, DDS or Printer Files that support a DRAWER or BIN parameter. To configure the 4247 Printer so that you can print these jobs without changing the application or job submission, put the 4247-001 printer into either the 4230-emulation or the 4224-emulation mode and have ONLY the ASF paper handling device attached.

Note: No tractors can be installed. In this configuration, the paper sources are identified by the host application as follows:

ASF Bin 1

Media ID = 1

ASF Bin 2

Media ID = 2

ASF Bin 3

Media ID = 3

Media Specifications

The 4247 Impact Printer accepts the following media:

Media types:**Continuous forms:**

Up to eight-part forms using front feed

Cutsheet forms:

Up to four-part forms manual feed, three-part auto feed

Media widths:**Continuous forms:**

3 inches to 17 inches (76 mm to 432 mm)

Cutsheet forms:

4.5 inches to 17.5 inches (102 mm to 444 mm) manual; 6 inches to 12 inches (152 mm to 305 mm) automatic

Media lengths:**Continuous forms:**

3 inches to 24 inches (76 mm to 609 mm)

Cutsheet forms:

4 inches to 24 inches (102 mm to 609 mm) manual, 5 inches to 14 inches (127 mm to 356 mm) automatic

3 inches to 24 inches (76 mm to 609 mm) continuous forms, 5 inches to 14 inches (127 mm to 356 mm) cutsheet

Attachments

The parallel interface will attach to:

- RS/6000 workstations (excluding POWERserver 930).
- Token Ring or Ethernet networks via the Network Print Server features.
- IBM PS/2 and IBM Personal Computer LPTx ports and to a Token Ring or Ethernet LAN via one of these computers.
- IBM-compatible PCs utilizing the parallel interface.
- AS/400 twinax terminals including IBM 348x InfoWindow II display stations, IBM 3477 InfoWindow display station, and IBM 3197 display workstation.
- 3482 InfoWindow II display.

The Coax interface (feature 4170) will attach to:

- BM 3174 Controller - Terminal port (using Release A5.5 or later, Release B4.0 or later, Release C6.0 or later).
- ES/9370 Processor Workstation Controller (feature code 6020 or 6120).
- ES/9371 Processor - 3270 Adapter.
- ES9000 - 9221 Workstation Subsystem Controller (feature 6120).
- Token Ring or Ethernet networks via the i-data 7913 RPQ for the IPDS datastream.

The Twinax interface (feature 4140) will attach to:

- AS/400 Advanced Systems.
- AS/400 Advanced Servers.
- AS/400 Advanced 36 Systems.
- IBM System 36.
- IBM 5394 and IBM 5494 Control Units.

- Token Ring or Ethernet networks via the i-data 7913 RPQ for the IPDS datastream.

System support via Parallel Attachment

The 4247-001 can use the IBM Personal Printer Data Stream (PPDS) in IBM 4202 Proprinter III XL or IBM 2381 Personal Printer emulations by choosing the corresponding device driver for the systems listed below as supporting the PPDS datastream and the corresponding emulation on the Operator panel.

In Epson FX emulation mode the 4247-001 can print files coded for the Epson FX-1050 using the Epson ESC/P printer control language.

Also, native 4247 support is provided for AIX and the Host Print Transform function in OS/400. The following systems support the 4247-001:

Table 88. System Support Through Parallel Attachments for the 4247 Printer

| System | Software - Minimum Level | Emulation |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| IBM PS/2 and IBM Personal Computers | OS/2 2.1 OS/2 LAN Server 3.0 OS/2 Communications Manager/2 1.0 DOS 5.0 Microsoft Windows 3.0 | PPDS or Epson FX |
| IBM RISC System/6000 | AIX Version 3.2.5 | PPDS or Epson FX |
| IBM AS/400 | OS/400 V2.3 Host Print Transform OS/400 V2.3 PC Support/400 W/S Function V2.2 Client Access/400 V3.1 Personal Communication for AS/400 for Windows V4.0 Personal Communication for AS/400 for OS/2 V4.0 IBM 5250 Enhanced Emulation for Windows V1.1 IBM 5250 Enhanced Emulation for DOS V2.4 | PPDS or Epson FX |

Network Operating System Support via Parallel Attachment

The Network Print Server features are supported in the following environments:

Table 89. Network Operating System Support through Parallel Attachments for the 4247 Printer

| Protocol | Operating System |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IPX/SPX | Novell NetWare 3.11 and above Novell NetWare 4.01 and above using bindery emulation |
| TCP/IP | Novell NetWare 3.11 and above IBM LAN Server 1.3 and above Novell NetWare 4.01 and above using bindery emulation |
| NETBIOS/ NETBEUI | IBM LAN Server 1.3 and above |
| TCP/IP | IBM LAN Server 1.3 and above |
| NETBIOS/ NETBEUI | Microsoft LAN Manager 2.0c and above |
| TCP/IP | Microsoft LAN Manager 2.0c and above |
| NETBIOS/ NETBEUI | Windows NT 3.1 and above |

Table 89. Network Operating System Support through Parallel Attachments for the 4247 Printer (continued)

| Protocol | Operating System |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| TCP/IP | Windows NT 3.1 and above |
| TCP/IP | AIX 3.2.5, 4.1 |
| Supported TCP/IP print methods are LPD, FTP, and Reverse Telnet. | |

IBM 4247-001 Coax Software Support

Table 90. Coax Software Support for the 4247 Printer

| IBM System or Controller | IBM Software (minimum release level) | 4247 Mode | 4224/4230 Emulation | 3268/3287 Emulation |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| System/370 and 390 Non-IPDS Mode | GDDM Version 3.1 VM/ESA V2.1 VM/RSCS V3.1 VM/VTAM V4.3 MVS/ESA V4.2.0 MVS/VTAM V4.3 VSE/ESA V1.3.3 VSE/VTAM V3.4 CICS/VSE V2.2.0 | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| System/370 and 390 IPDS Mode | GDDM Version 3.1 GDDM Version 3.2 PSF/VM V2.1.1 PSF/MVS V2.1.0 PSF/MVS V2.2.0 PSF for OS/390 PSF/VSE V2.2.1 | No Yes No No Yes Yes | Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes | No No No No No No |

IBM 4247-001 Twinax Software Support

Table 91. Twinax Software Support for the 4247 Printer

| IBM System or Controller | IBM Software (minimum release level) | 4247 Mode | 4224/4230 Emulation | 3268/3287 Emulation |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| System/36 | SSP Release 5.1 IPDS Adv. func. PRPQ DisplayWrite/36 Business Graphics Utility Operation Control Language | No | Yes | Yes |
| AS/400 Non-IPDS Mode | OS/400 Version 3 Rel 1 SSP Release 7.1 OfficeVision/400 Business Graphics Util. GDDM CL and DDS | Yes No Yes Yes Yes Yes | Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes Yes | No No No No No No |

Table 91. Twinax Software Support for the 4247 Printer (continued)

| IBM System or Controller | IBM Software (minimum release level) | 4247 Mode | 4224/4230 Emulation | 3268/3287 Emulation |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------|---------------------|
| AS/400 IPDS Mode | OS/400 Version 3 Rel 1 | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| | OS/400 Version 3 Rel 6 | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| | GDDM | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| | Adv Funct. Print Ut V2R1 | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| | PSF/400 Release 3.1 | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| System/370 and 390 | PSF/MVS V2.2.0 and later PSF for OS/390 | Yes | Yes | No |

Using PSF

In PSF for OS/390, PSF/VSE, and PSF/VM (S/390 PSFs), identify the desired paper source in the FORMDEF, using the appropriate Media ID number as defined in "Identifying the Paper Source (Media IDs)" on page 130. For selecting the Manual Cut Sheet, use **100** as the Media ID number.

You can use Page Printer Formatting Aid (PPFA) to create Form Definitions for S/390 and AIX environments. PPFA is also available for AS/400 as an optional feature of the IBM AFP PrintSuite for OS/400. The following is a sample of PPFA commands that you could use to select the first ASF bin on a 4247 printer:

```
SETUNITS 1 IN 1 IN;
FORMDEF 4247B1 REPLACE YES
BIN 5;
```

In AS/400, you can specify a Form Definition with the PRTAFPDTA command and DEVTYPE=*AFPDS. In OS/400 V3R2 and V3R7 or later releases, you can specify Form Definitions in the Printer File.

Selecting AS/400 Media

To select the input media source in AS/499, use a combination of two Printer File parameters: Form Feed (FORMFEED) and Source Drawer (DRAWER). For a 4247 Printer with both Continuous Feed and ASF installed, with the printer configured in either the 4247 Printer mode or the emulation (4230/42x4) mode, you should use the following selection parameters:

```
Front CF:  FORMFEED (*CONT)           (See notes 1 & 2)
Rear CF:   FORMFEED (*AUTOCUT) DRAWER (2) (See note 2)
ASF Bin1:  FORMFEED (*AUTOCUT) DRAWER (5)
ASF Bin2:  FORMFEED (*AUTOCUT) DRAWER (6)
ASF Bin3:  FORMFEED (*AUTOCUT) DRAWER (7)
Manual:    FORMFEED (*CUT)             (See note 3)
```

Notes:

1. You can also select the Front CF source by using FORMFEED (*AUTOCUT) DRAWER (1); however, FORMFEED (*CONT) is the recommended method.
2. In AS/400, when you specify that the paper is cut sheet (*AUTOCUT) instead of continuous forms, the Forms Alignment message normally issued for continuous forms cannot be issued.
3. You can select the manual feed source only if you are running on an IPDS printer.

If the 4247 Printer is configured for Compatibility Paper Source Selection as described above, and only an ASF is installed, you can select a bin with the following parameters:

```

ASF Bin1:  FORMFEED  (*AUTOCUT)  DRAWER (1)
ASF Bin2:  FORMFEED  (*AUTOCUT)  DRAWER (2)
ASF Bin3:  FORMFEED  (*AUTOCUT)  DRAWER (3)

```

In OS/400 Version 3 Release 2 and Release 7, the FORMFEED parameter has been enhanced; you can now explicitly select the rear continuous form input source by using the following parameters:

```
Rear CF:   FORMFEED  (*CONT2)
```

Using GDDM

When the 4247 Printer is attached to GDDM in the S/390 environment, you can select media input sources by using the IPDSBIN processing option.

The IPDSBIN processing option has the format (IPDSBIN,*m,n*), where *m* is the main document bin and *n* is the header page bin. The values for 4247 Printer are:

```

0 = printer default
1 = front CF
2 = rear CF
5 = ASF Bin1
6 = ASF Bin2
7 = ASF Bin3
65 = envelopes
97-100 = manual feed bin

```

GDDM will not handle the linking of bins. You must specify the correct value according to the printer setup.

Using 'forms' parameters

When users specified forms, prior to the 4247 printer, for continuous forms printers with only a single continuous forms paper source, they used the FORMS parameters in JCL or, for the AS/400, the FORMTYPE parameter. You can still use this method to direct the operator change to the correct forms for the job. But you cannot use this method to cause the printer to switch between the Front and Rear continuous forms sources.

Operator-Adjustable Forms

To align data on preprinted forms, the 4247 Printer operator can adjust the physical top and left margins, which will offset the page image on the printing medium. The horizontal (left margin) adjustment range is from -6.9 mm (-0.27 inches) to +38.35 mm (+1.51 inches). The vertical (top margin) adjustment range is from -30.5 mm (-1.2 inches) to +38.1 mm (+1.5 inches). This adjustment does not affect the size of the valid printable area; however, using this adjustment can produce positioning errors if the horizontal adjustment is too large for the form being used.

Print-Quality Levels for IPDS Models

The 4247 Printer allows you to select different levels of print quality. Higher quality corresponds to slower print speeds. To select a print-quality level, use the QUALITY subcommand on the COPYGROUP command in the form definition. To use Fast Draft Quality, you must enable it using a printer configuration menu on the operator panel. Refer to your printer publications on how to do this. If the printer is not configured, all requests to print using Fast Draft will automatically be printed in DP Quality. Specify the values shown in Table 92 on the QUALITY subcommand to get the correct print-quality level.

Table 92. 4247 Printer Print-Quality Selection Values

| Print-Quality Level | Hexadecimal Value Range | Decimal Value Range |
|---------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Reserved | X'00' | |
| Fast Draft Quality | X'01' through X'2A' | 1 through 42 |

Table 92. 4247 Printer Print-Quality Selection Values (continued)

| Print-Quality Level | Hexadecimal Value Range | Decimal Value Range |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| DP Quality | X'2B' through X'55' | 43 through 85 |
| DP Text Quality | X'56' through X'AA' | 86 through 170 |
| NLQ Quality | X'AB' through X'FE' | 171 through 254 |
| Printer Customized Default | X'FF' | 255 |

Not all symbol sets can be printed at all print-quality levels. Table 93 identifies the print-quality levels that can be used for some of the 4247 Printer symbol sets and suggests the name of a corresponding coded font that may be used for each symbol set. Refer to the 4247 Printer publications for a list of 4247 Printer symbol sets.

Table 93. 4247 Printer Symbol Sets and Corresponding Coded Fonts

| Symbol Sets | 4247 Printer Print Quality | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|------------|---------|--------|
| | Fast Draft | DP Quality | DP text | NLQ |
| APL10 | | X0AE10 | | |
| Courier Bold 10 Pitch | | | X0CB10 | X0CB10 |
| Courier Bold 12 Pitch | | | X0CB12 | X0CB12 |
| Courier Bold 15 Pitch | | | X0CB15 | X0CB15 |
| Courier Double Wide Italic 15 Pitch | | | X0CW15 | X0CW15 |
| Courier Double Wide 15 Pitch | | | X0CD15 | X0CD15 |
| Courier Italic 10 Pitch | | | X0CI10 | X0CI10 |
| Courier Italic 12 Pitch | | | X0CI12 | X0CI12 |
| Courier Italic 15 Pitch | | | X0CI15 | X0CI15 |
| Courier 10 Pitch | | | X0CR10 | X0CR10 |
| Courier 12 Pitch | | | X0CR12 | X0CR12 |
| Courier 15 Pitch | | | X0CR15 | X0CR15 |
| Essay Bold Mixed Pitch | | | X0EBR9 | X0EBR9 |
| Essay Italic Mixed Pitch | | | X0EIR9 | X0EIR9 |
| Essay Standard Mixed Pitch | | | X0ESR9 | X0ESR9 |
| Gothic Text 10 Pitch | X0GB10 | X0GB10 | | |
| Gothic Bold 10 Pitch | X0GB12 | X0GB12 | | |
| Gothic Text 12 Pitch | X0GI12 | X0GI12 | | |
| Gothic Bold 12 Pitch | X0GT10 | X0GT10 | | |
| Gothic Italic 12 Pitch | X0GT12 | X0GT12 | | |
| Gothic Text 15 Pitch | X0GT15 | X0GT15 | | |
| Katakana | X0KN10 | X0KN10 | | |
| OCR-A | | | | X0AAO |
| OCR-B | | | | X0BOA |

PSF selects symbol sets according to the following hierarchy:

1. If you select a symbol set that matches the print quality specified in the form definition, PSF prints the file.

2. If you select a symbol set but do not specify a print quality, the print quality selected in the printer configuration or the printer default print quality is used.
3. If you select a symbol set that does not match the print quality specified, the printer attempts to print the text using a “best fit” font, which it selects. Some pages may be duplicated, and some information on the page in error may be missing.
4. If you select a symbol set that is not available on the 4247 Printer, PSF does not print the remainder of the file.
5. With PSF for AS/400, if you select a symbol set that is not available on the 4247 Printer, and you specified absolute fidelity, PSF does not print the remainder of the file. If you specified content fidelity, PSF substitutes another symbol set and prints the file.

Printer Capabilities

The capabilities of the 4247 Printer are different from those of most of the other printers supported by PSF in the following ways:

- Differences in the contents of the character sets in the fonts provided by PSF and in the symbol sets resident in the 4247 Printer may result in inconsistent printed output between the two types of fonts.
- Although the 4247 Printer can print with downloaded symbol sets, it uses only resident symbol sets when driven by PSF.
- The PSF for OS/390 and PSF/VSE default fonts specified with the CHARS parameter in the PRINTDEV statement cause errors in which PSF issues messages saying “resource not found”. Change or override the CHARS parameter to use a 4247 Printer symbol set.
- The 4247 Printer prints both text and images in only 0° character orientation. All other orientations other than 0° are supported for graphics. The 4247 Printer does not support rotated fonts.
- The 4247 Printer prints images with 144-pel resolution..
- The 4247 Printer does not support multiple subgroups within a copy group in a form definition. Printing of multiple copies of individual pages within a subgroup is not supported.

Chapter 25. 4400 Thermal Label Printer (4400)

The IBM 4400 Thermal Label printers are a family of high-quality, direct thermal and thermal transfer printers designed for printing labels and tags.



Figure 50. 4400 Model 004 Thermal Label Printer with Validator Option Attached

Table 94 summarizes the printer characteristics.

Table 94. 4400 Thermal Label Printers

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value 4400 Model 004/006 | Characteristic Value 4400 Model 008 |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate: inches per second (ips) | 8 ips at 300 dpi 10 ips at 203 dpi | 6 ips at 300 dpi 8 ips at 203 dpi |
| Print technology | Thermal | |
| Datastreams | ASCII, CodeV and IGP, IPDS, SCS | |
| Form type | Continuous | |
| Number of input areas | 1 standard | |
| Number of output areas | 1 standard | |
| Finisher attachments | n/a | |
| Manual forms feed | no | |

Table 94. 4400 Thermal Label Printers (continued)

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | no |
| Color | no |
| Operator-adjustable forms | yes |
| Printhead resolution (dots-per-inch) | 203 dpi (at 8 ips) 300 dpi (at 10 ips) |

Printable Area

The size of the printable area is set using a printer configuration option or by using the Set Media Size IPDS command. If the defined printable area is not large enough to contain the page of data, the 4400 Thermal Label Printer stops printing, issues a negative acknowledgement reply (NACK), and enters home state.

Media Specifications

The 4400 Thermal Printers accepts the following media:

Media types:

Roll or fanfold; die-cut or continuous; labels, tags and tickets; paper, film or synthetic stock; thermal transfer or direct thermal

Media widths:

Model 004

0.75 inches to 4.5 inches (19 to 114 mm)

Model 006

2.0 inches to 6.8 inches (51 to 171 mm)

Model 008

3.0 inches to 8.75 inches (76 to 222 mm)

Media thickness:

0.0025 inches to 0.010 inches (0.07 to 0.25 mm)

Roll core diameter:

3.0 inches (76 mm)

Maximum roll diameter

8.0 inches (203 mm)

Thermal transfer ribbons:

Standard ribbon length: 2,050 feet (625 m)

Attachments

The IBM 4400 Thermal Label Printers attach to the systems, controllers, and processors described below:

Table 95. Attachments for the 4400 Thermal Label Printer

| Interface Type | System/Control Unit/Processor | Attachment |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ASCII | AS/400 | ASCII Workstation Controller port on 9402 (except Model Y10), 9404, and 9406 |
| | 3197, 3477, 3486/87/88 | Terminal (Parallel port only) |
| | 3174 Controller | Asynchronous Emulation Adapter |
| | ES/9370 | ASCII Subsystem |
| | Micro Channel 370 | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| | RS/6000 | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| | PC, PS/2 | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| | IBM-Compatible PCs | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| | Non-IBM Systems | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| Coax | 3174 Controllers | Coaxial ports (Release A3.0 or higher) |
| | ES/9370, ES/9000 | Workstation Subsystem |
| | Processors | Controller port (#6020 or #6120 |
| | S/390 Parallel Enterprise Servers | via 3174 Controller |
| Twinax | AS/400 | Twinaxial Workstation Controller port on 9402, 9404, and 9406 |
| | AS/400 Advanced 36 | Twinaxial Workstation Controller |
| | S/36 | Workstation Controller port on 5360, 5362, 5363, and 5364 |
| | 5394 and 5494 Control Unit | Workstation port |
| LAN | Ethernet | Ethernet 10/100 BaseT Adapter |

Software Requirements

The following table summarizes the IPDS support by platform.

Table 96. IPDS Support for the 4400 Thermal Printer

| Base Support: | PSF/MVS V2.2.0 PSF for OS/390 | PSF/VSE V2.2.1 | PSF/400 V4.3 or later | PSF V3.1.0 or later |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| Base Support: | | | | |
| 4028 Dev. Type 3816 Dev. Type 240 DPI Resolution 300 DPI Resolution | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Roll Input | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Roll Output | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| AFP/IPDS Towers: (Not including If3) | All | All | All | All |
| Printer Connectivity: | | | | |
| Ethernet TCP/IP | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Twinax | No | No | Yes | No |

Table 96. IPDS Support for the 4400 Thermal Printer (continued)

| Base Support: | PSF/MVS V2.2.0 PSF for OS/390 | PSF/VSE V2.2.1 | PSF/400 V4.3 or later | PSF V3.1.0 or later |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| Base Support: | | | | |
| Font Download Raster | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Resident AFP Font Collection | | | | |
| 4028 Core Coordinated | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |

IBM 4400 IPDS

Infoprint Manager Summary:

Table 97. IPDS Support with Infoprint Manager for the 4400 Thermal Printer

| | Infoprint Manager for AIX V3.2 or later | Infoprint Manager for NT 1.1 or later |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Base Support: | | |
| 4028 Dev. Type 3816 Dev. Type 240 DPI Resolution 300 DPI Resolution | Yes | Yes |
| Roll Input | Yes | Yes |
| Roll Output | Yes | Yes |
| AFP/IPDS Towers: (Not including If3) | All | All |
| Printer Connectivity: Ethernet TCP/IP | Yes | Yes |
| Font Download Raster | Yes | Yes |
| Resident AFP Font Collection | | |
| 4028 Core Coordinated | Yes | Yes |

Printer Emulations

With a coax interface, the IBM 4400 Printer emulates the following IBM Coax Printer models:

- Non-IPDS
 - 3287 Models 1 and 2
 -
 - 4234 Model 1
- IPDS
 - 4028
 - 3816

With a twinax interface, the IBM 4400 printer emulates the following IBM twinax models:

- 4234 Model 2
- 5225

Note: Refer to the *IBM 4400 Thermal Label Printer Coax/Twinax Programmer's Reference Manual* for details and limitations concerning the twinax and coax emulations.

The ASCII Emulation software provides the following emulations:

- Printer Protocols
 - IBM Proprinter III XL
 - Epson FX-1050
 - Printronix P-Series
 - Printronix P-Series XQ
 - Printronix Serial Matrix
- Page Orientations:
 - Portrait/Inverted Portrait
 - Landscape/Inverted Landscape
- Graphics:
 - Bit Image Graphics
 - P-Series Compatible Plot Mode
- Vertical Page Formatting
 - Printronix P-Series Electronic Vertical Format Unit (EVFU)
 - Serial Matrix Vertical Formatting Unit (VFU)
- Character Sets:
 - IBM PC
 - ECMA-94 Latin 1
 - Multinational
 - DEC Multinational
 - IBM Code Page 437 and 850
 - International symbol sets in the following categories:
 - Arabic Sets
 - Cyrillic Sets
 - European Sets
 - Greek Sets
 - Hebrew Sets
 - Turkish Sets
- Font Typefaces:
 - Courier
 - Letter Gothic
 - OCR-A
 - OCR-B
 - CG Triumvirate Bold Condensed
 - Ability to download True Type.

Refer to the *IBM 4400 Thermal Label Printer ASCII Programmer's Reference Manual* for details and limitations concerning the ASCII emulations

When the Ethernet 10/100 BaseT Network Interface Card is installed, the following Network Operating Systems and protocols are supported:

Table 98. Ethernet Support for the 4400 Thermal Printer

| Operating System | Protocol |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| OS/2 Warp 3 & 4 OS/400 (V3.2 and later) Windows 98 Windows NT Windows 2000 UNIX ¹ | TCP/IP |

Table 98. Ethernet Support for the 4400 Thermal Printer (continued)

| Operating System | Protocol |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Windows 95 | NetBIOS over TCP/IP |
| Novell NetWare V3.11, and later Novell NetWare V4.01, and later | IPX/SPX and TCP/IP |
| 1. The Ethernet Interface supports network printing under various TCP/IP environments including most variations of UNIX. | |

Refer to the *IBM 4400 Ethernet Interface User's Manual* for details and limitations concerning the Ethernet NIC Network Support.

Chapter 26. 6400 Line Matrix Printer (6400)

This section describes the 6400 Printer's characteristics. In this publication, these printers are called the 6400 printers, unless a functional difference between models occurs. The 6400 Printer is a continuous-forms, line-dot matrix, impact printers that use the shuttle-matrix print technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes at up to 1500 lpm for the 6400 Printer depending on the model.



Figure 51. 6400 Printer

Table 99 summarizes the printer characteristics.

Table 99. 6400 Line Matrix Printers

| Printer Characteristics | Characteristic Value |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maximum printing rate: lines per minute (lpm) | 500 lpm (050/P50) 1000 lpm (010/P10) 1,500 lpm (015) |
| Print technology | Impact Dot Matrix |
| Datastreams | PPDS, Epson, ASCII, SCS, IPDS |
| Form type | Continuous |
| Number of input areas | 1 standard |
| Number of output areas | 1 standard |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | no |
| Color | no |
| Operator-adjustable forms | yes |
| Printhead resolution (pels-per-inch) | 120 x 144 |
| Maximum characters per second (cps) per month (duty cycles) | n/a |

Printable Area

The size of the printable area is set using a printer configuration option or by using the Set Media Size IPDS command. If the defined printable area is not large enough to contain the page of data, the 6400 Printer stops printing, issues a negative acknowledgement reply (NACK), and enters home state.

Media Specifications

The 6400 Line Matrix Printer accepts the following media:

Media types:

One to six-part forms

Media widths:

3 inches to 17 inches (76 mm to 432 mm) with tear strips; when using rear exit, the maximum is 16 inches (406 mm)

Media lengths:

3 inches to 24 inches (76 mm to 610 cm)

Attachments

The IBM 6400 Model 004 Printer attaches to systems, controllers, and processors as described below:

Table 100. System, Controller, and Processors Attachments for the 6400 Printer

| Interface Type | System/Control Unit/Processor | Attachment |
|----------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ASCII | AS/400 | ASCII Workstation Controller port on 9402 (except Model Y10), 9404, and 9406 |
| | 3197, 3477, 3486/87/88 | Terminal (Parallel port only) |
| | 3174 Controller | Asynchronous Emulation Adapter |
| | ES/9370 | ASCII Subsystem |
| | Micro Channel370 | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| | RS/6000 | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| | LAN Attachments | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| | PC, PS/2 | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| | IBM-compatible PCs | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| | Non-IBM systems | ASCII serial or parallel port |
| Coax | 3174 Controllers | Coaxial ports (Release A3.0 or higher) |
| | ES/9370, ES/9000 Processors | Workstation Subsystem Controller port (FC 6020 or 6120) |
| | S/390 Parallel Transaction Servers | via 3174 Controller |
| Twinax | AS/400 | Twinaxial Workstation Controller port on 9402, 9404, and 9406 |
| | AS/400 Advanced 36 | Twinaxial Workstation Controller |
| | S/36 | Workstation Controller port on 5360, 5362, 5363 and 5364 |
| | 5394 5494 Control Unit | Workstation port |

IBM 6400 Model 004 Printer ASCII Software Support:

The IBM 6400 Model 004 Printer can use the IBM Personal Printer Data Stream (PPDS) in IBM Proprinter III XL emulation or the Epson FX 1050 emulation when attached to Serial (RS-232C/RS-422A) interfaces, or the IBM PC ASCII (Centronics) Parallel interface. For more information, refer to the 6400 ASCII Programmer's Reference (S246-0118).

Also, native IBM 6400 Printer support is provided for the IBM RS/6000 systems. Drivers are supplied on the printer configuration utility diskette.

Table 101. ASCII Support for the 6400 Printer

| System | Software - Minimum Level | Emulation |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| IBM PS/2, IBM PC | OS/2 2.1 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | OS/2 LAN Server 1.0 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | OS/2 Extended Services 1.0 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | OS/2 Communications Manager/2 1.0 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | DOS 3.3 through 6.3 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | Microsoft Windows 3.1 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| IBM RS/6000 | AIX Version 3.1.5 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |

Table 101. ASCII Support for the 6400 Printer (continued)

| System | Software - Minimum Level | Emulation |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| IBM AS/400 | OS/400 Version 2.3 Host Print Transform | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | OS/400 Version 2.3 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | PC Support/400 Version 2.3 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | IBM 5250 Enhanced Emulation for DOS Version 2.4 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | IBM 5252 Emulation for Windows Version 1.1 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | Personal Communications for AS/400 for Windows Version | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | Personal Communications for AS/400 for OS/2 Version 4.0 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| | Client Access/400 Version 3.1 | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |
| 3174 with AEA | Release A5.4 or later, Release B4.0 or later, or Release C1.1 or later | Proprinter III XL, Epson FX |

Network Operating System Support

The Network Print Server features are supported in the following environments:

Table 102. Caption. Description

| Protocol | Operating System |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IPX/SPX | Novell NetWare 3.11 and above Novell NetWare 4.01 and above using bindery emulation |
| TCP/IP | Novell NetWare 3.11 and above Novell NetWare 4.01 and above using bindery emulation IBM LAN Server 1.3 and above Microsoft LAN Manager 2.0c and above Windows NT 3.1 and above AIX 3.2.5, 4.1 |
| NETBIOS/NETBEUI | IBM LAN Server 1.3 and above Microsoft LAN Manager 2.0c and above Windows NT 3.1 and above |

Supported TCP/IP print methods are LPD, FTP, and Reverse Telnet.

Operator-Adjustable Forms

Using the Set Top of Forms key on the operator panel, the operator can select where the first line of printing is relative to the top edge of the paper.

To align data on preprinted forms, the 6400 Printer operator can adjust the physical top and left margins, which offsets the page image on the printing medium. The horizontal (left margin) adjustment range is from -6.9 mm (-0.27 inches) to +38.35 mm (+1.51 inches). The vertical (top margin) adjustment range is from -30.5 mm (-1.2 inches) to -38.1 mm (+1.5 inches). This adjustment does not affect the size of the valid printable area; however, using this adjustment can produce positioning errors if the horizontal adjustment is too large for the form being used.

Print-Quality Levels in IPDS Mode

The 6400 Printer allows you to select different levels of print quality. A higher print-quality level corresponds to slower print speeds. To select a print-quality level, use the QUALITY subcommand on the COPYGROUP command in a form definition created using Page Printer Formatting Aid/370 (PPFA/370). You must enable Draft Quality by using a printer configuration menu on the operator panel. Refer to your printer publications on how to do this. If the printer is not configured, all requests to print using Draft Quality are automatically printed in DP Quality. Specify the values shown in Table 103 on the QUALITY subcommand to get the correct print-quality level.

Table 103. 6400 Printer Print-Quality Selection Values

| Print-Quality Level | Hexadecimal Value Range | Decimal Value Range |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Reserved | X'00' | |
| DP Quality | X'01' through X'55' | 1 through 85 |
| DP Text Quality | X'56' through X'AA' | 86 through 170 |
| NLQ Quality | X'AB' through X'FE' | 171 through 254 |
| Printer Customized Default | X'FF' | 255 |

Not all symbol sets can be printed at all print-quality levels. Table 104 identifies the print-quality levels that can be used for **some** of the 6400 Printer symbol sets and suggests the name of a corresponding coded font that can be used for each symbol set. Refer to the 6400 Printer publications for a more complete list of 6400 Printer symbol sets.

Table 104. 6400 Printer Symbol Sets and Corresponding Coded Fonts

| Symbol Sets | 6400 Printer Print Quality | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------|--------|
| | Draft | DP | NLQ |
| APL10 | | X0AE10 | X0AE10 |
| Courier Bold 10 Pitch | | | X0CB10 |
| Courier Bold 12 Pitch | | | X0CB12 |
| Courier Bold 15 Pitch | | | X0CB15 |
| Courier Double Wide Italic 15 Pitch | | | X0CW15 |
| Courier Double Wide 15 Pitch | | | X0CD15 |
| Courier Italic 10 Pitch | | | X0CI10 |
| Courier Italic 12 Pitch | | | X0CI12 |
| Courier Italic 15 Pitch | | | X0CI15 |
| Courier 10 Pitch | | | X0CR10 |
| Courier 12 Pitch | | | X0CR12 |
| Courier 15 Pitch | | | X0CR15 |
| Essay Bold Mixed Pitch | | | X0EBTR |
| Essay Italic Mixed Pitch | | | X0EITR |
| Essay Standard Mixed Pitch | | | X0ESTR |
| Gothic Text 10 Pitch | X0GB10 | X0GB10 | |
| Gothic Bold 12 Pitch | X0GB12 | X0GB12 | |
| Gothic Italic 12 Pitch | X0GI12 | X0GI12 | |
| Gothic Text 10 Pitch | X0GT10 | X0GT10 | |
| Gothic Text 12 Pitch | X0GT12 | X0GT12 | |

Table 104. 6400 Printer Symbol Sets and Corresponding Coded Fonts (continued)

| Symbol Sets | 6400 Printer Print Quality | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|--------|--------|
| | Draft | DP | NLQ |
| Gothic Italic 12 Pitch | X0GT12 | X0GT12 | |
| Gothic Text 13 Pitch | X0GT13 | X0GT13 | |
| Gothic Text 13 Pitch | X0D224 | X0D224 | |
| Gothic Text 13 Pitch | X0D225 | X0D225 | |
| Gothic Text 13 Pitch | X0D226 | X0D226 | |
| Gothic Text 13 Pitch | X0D227 | X0D227 | |
| Gothic Text 15 Pitch | X0GT15 | X0GT15 | |
| Gothic Text 18 Pitch | X0GT18 | X0GT18 | |
| Katakana | | X0KN10 | X0KN10 |
| Letter Gothic Bold 12 Pitch | X0LB12 | X0LB12 | |
| OCR-A | | | X0AOA |
| OCR-B | | | X0OCRB |

PSF selects symbol sets according to the following hierarchy:

1. If you select a symbol set that matches the print quality specified in the form definition, PSF prints the file.
2. If you select a symbol set but do not specify a print quality, the print quality selected in the printer configuration or the printer default print quality is used.
3. If you select a symbol set that does not match the print quality specified, the printer attempts to print the text using a "best fit" font, which it selects.
4. **PSF for OS/390, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE** If you select a symbol set that is not available on the 6400 Printer, PSF does not print the remainder of the file.
5. With PSF for AS/400, if you select a symbol set that is not available on the 6400 Printer, and you specified absolute fidelity, PSF does not print the remainder of the file. If you specified content fidelity, PSF substitutes another symbol set and prints the file.

Printer Capabilities

The capabilities of the 6400 Printer are different from those of most of the other printers supported by PSF in the following ways:

- Differences in the contents of the character sets in the fonts provided by PSF and in the symbol sets resident in the 6400 Printer may result in inconsistent printed output between the two types of fonts.
- The 6400 Printer prints only with resident symbol sets.
- The PSF for OS/390 and PSF/VSE default fonts specified with the CHARS parameter in the PRINTDEV statement cause errors in which PSF issues messages saying "resource not found". Change or override the CHARS parameter to use a 6400 Printer symbol set.
- The 6400 Printer prints text and images in 0° and 180° character rotation and prints graphics in all four rotations. The 6400 Printer does not print text in 90° or 270° rotation.
- The 6400 Printer has a 120 x 140-pel printhead, but the printer microcode enables the 6400 Printer to print with simulated 144 x 144-pel resolution.
- The 6400 Printer does not support multiple subgroups within a copy group in a form definition, nor does it print multiple copies of individual pages within a subgroup.

Chapter 27. Infoprint 62 Printer (4370)

This section describes the Infoprint 62 printer characteristics. The Infoprint 62 (Models 002 and 003) are continuous-form printers that use LED electrophotographic print technology to print text, images, graphics, and bar codes.



Figure 52. Infoprint 62 Printer

Table 105 summarizes the printer characteristics for the Infoprint 62 printers.

Table 105. Infoprint 62 Printer Characteristics

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Print technology | Light Emitting Diode |
| Datastreams | IPDS |
| Form type | Continuous |
| Number of input bins | Standard: Stack height up to 3000 sheets of 64 gsm paper |

Table 105. Infoprint 62 Printer Characteristics (continued)

| Printer Characteristic | Characteristic Value |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of output bins | Standard: Stack height up to 3000 sheets of 64 gsm paper |
| | Optional: Stack height up to 2000 sheets with Power Stacker |
| Finisher attachments | n/a |
| Manual forms feed | n/a |
| Envelope printing | n/a |
| MICR printing | no |
| Duplex printing | no |
| Color | no |
| Adjust print-quality levels | yes |
| Printhead resolution | 240 dots-per-inch (4370-002) 300 dots-per-inch (4370-003) |
| Maximum printing rates for letter (8.5 x 11 inches) | |
| inches per second | 8.8 |
| inches per minute | 528 |
| Maximum printing rates for letter in pages per minute ¹ | |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) simplex | 62 |
| 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) duplex | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) simplex | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (11 inches long) duplex | n/a |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 (210 x 297 mm) | |
| mm per second | 225.78 |
| mm per minute | 13,546.8 |
| Maximum printing rates for A4 in pages per minute ¹ | |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) simplex | 64 |
| 1-up landscape (210 mm long) duplex | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) simplex | n/a |
| 2-up portrait (297 mm long) duplex | n/a |
| Maximum usage in pages per month (duty cycles) ² | |
| Letter: 1-up landscape (8.5 inches long) | 600,000 simplex |
| Letter: 2-up landscape (11 inches long) | n/a |
| A4: 1-up landscape (210 mm long) | 620,000 simplex |
| A4: 2-up landscape (297 mm long) | n/a |
| <p>1. Maximum printing rate is the maximum number of pages of the indicated size and configuration that can be printed at the constant speed of paper movement shown for each printer. Rates for pages of different sizes and configuration can be calculated by dividing the form length into the printer speed. Actual printing rate will be less if the printer cannot reach this rate due to complexity or density of the data or the ability of the system to deliver data at this rate.</p> <p>2. Maximum usage is based on operating 7 days a week, 24 hours a day, at maximum printing rate with normal maintenance and operations activity. IBM does not recommend reaching this monthly maximum on consistent basis.</p> | |

Printable Area

Width The maximum print width for the Infoprint 62 is 14.6 inches (370.84 mm), which is the width of the print head. The maximum width for any given form cannot be wider than the width of the form, minus 1.0 inches (25.4 mm). That is 0.5 inches (12.7 mm) on each side of the print line.

Length

The printer is designed to print lengthwise to the perforation at its rated speed. As with other continuous forms printers, print quality degradation occurs near the perforation. No degradation occurs at 0.33 inches (8.5 mm) the perforation for character data, and 0.5 inches (12.7 mm) for solid area fill, logos, or images.

Figure 53 shows an example of the printable area of a form. The printable area shown is 8.17 by 10.66 inches.

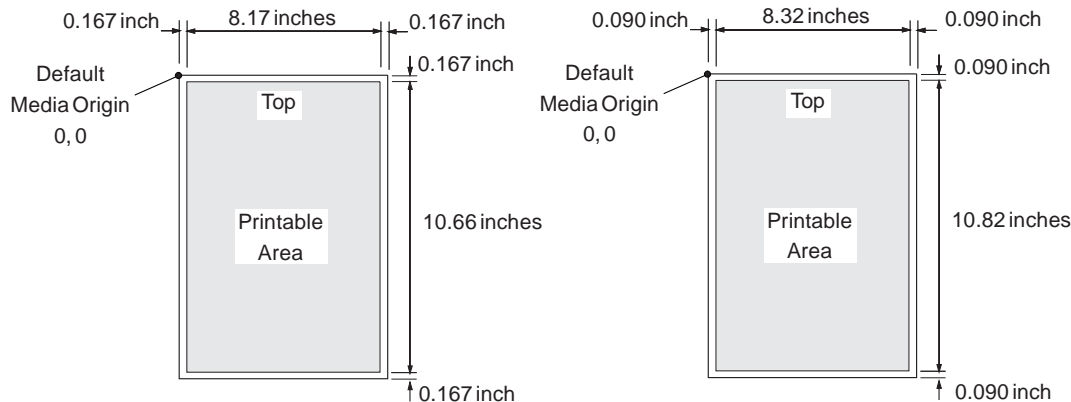


Figure 53. Printable Area in IPDS Mode on the Infoprint 62

Media Specifications

The Infoprint 62 accepts the following media:

Media types:

Preprinted or blank forms, pre-punched forms, perforated forms, security forms, approved paper labels, color paper

Media widths:

7 inches to 16 inches (178 to 406 mm); maximum print width is 14.6 inches (371 mm)

Media lengths:

3 inches to 22 inches (76.2 to 559 mm) standard; 7 inches to 12 inches (178 to 305 mm) with optional Power Stacker

Media weights:

17 to 54 lbs. (64 to 204 gsm) letter basis; 17 to 44 lbs. (64 to 165 gsm) bond; 44 to 125 lbs. (71 to 204 gsm) tag and label

Attachments

The IBM Infoprint 62 Continuous Forms Printer must be attached to either an Ethernet or Token-Ring LAN, or a S/390 Parallel Channel or ESCON Channel. The standard adapter is Ethernet 10BaseT. Attachment to Ethernet 10Base2, Token Ring, or a S/390 Parallel Channel or ESCON require available features.

Token-Ring

The IBM Infoprint 62 Printer Token-Ring Attachment (#4121) will attach to the following devices:

- 8228 Token-Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to an AS/400, PS/2, or RS/6000 processor
- 8230 Token-Ring Controlled Access Unit attached to an AS/400, PS/2, or RS/6000 processor
- 8228 Token-Ring Multistation Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3746, 3725, 3174, 3745, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor.
- 8230 Token-Ring Controlled Access Unit attached to a 3172, 3746, 3725, 3745, 3174, or 3720 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor.
- The printer may be located a maximum distance of 100 meters (328 feet) from the 8228 Multistation Access Unit or from the 8230 Controlled Access Unit.
- The distance between the 8228 Multistation Units can be increased with either the 8220 or 8219 Optical Fiber Repeater.

Ethernet

The Infoprint 62 standard Ethernet 10BaseT attachment will attach to the following devices:

- Twisted pair cabling attached to an RS/6000, PS/2, or AS/400
- Twisted pair cabling attached to an IBM 3172 or 3745 attached to a 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor.
- An IBM 8250 or 8260 Twisted Pair Hub

The Infoprint 62 Ethernet 10Base2 attachment (FC #4162) will attach to the following devices:

- Thin Ethernet Coaxial attached to a RS/6000, PS/2, or AS/400
- Thin Ethernet Coaxial attached to an IBM 3172 or 3745 attached to a IBM 3090, ES/9000, or 308X processor.

System/390 Parallel Channel:

System/390 parallel channel attachment is supported in the PSF for OS/390, PSF/MVS, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE printing environments.

For S/390 parallel channel attachment, a control unit position on a S/370 parallel block multiplexer channel is required on an IBM 3090, ES/9000 processor, a S/390 Parallel Enterprise Server, or a Multiprise 2000 Server.

Attachment is also supported via the 9034 ESCON Converter Model 1 for the S/390 Parallel Channel.

ESCON Channel

The ESCON channel is supported in the PSF for OS/390, PSF/MVS, PSF/VM, and PSF/VSE printing environments.

- The IBM Infoprint 62 may be attached natively to IBM ESCON channel (3090-J, 9021, 9121, 9221, 9672, 2003).
- Attachment is also supported via the 9032/9033 ESCON Directors and 9036 ESCON Remote Channel Model 1 and Model 2.

The ESCON attachment may be shared between multiple MVS systems. To allow access by a different host, the operator must drain the printer and vary it offline to one host before varying it online to the second host.

A "Multi-Host Environment" ESCON configuration option is provided that when used with PSF for OS/390 or PSF/MVS ASSIGN/UNASSIGN support guarantees a printer on a shared attachment cannot be online to multiple hosts concurrently. A second host trying to assign the printer will be denied access with a notice that the printer is assigned elsewhere. Multi-Host Environment support increases configuration flexibility and simplifies operational procedures for ESCON-attached printers.

The Multi-Host Environment is supported only by OS/390 V1R3.0 or higher operating with either of the following:

- PSF 3.1.0 for OS/390
- PSF/MVS 2.2.0 with APAR OW29992
- PSF for OS/390

All host systems (which may be VM guests) must be OS/390 V1R3.0 or higher.

Appendix A. Migrating Your 3800 Printer Applications

Compatibility among PSF-Supported Printers

The following sections describe compatibility considerations when routing jobs among PSF-supported printers.

Page Presentation

Page presentation refers to the position of a printed page of data on a sheet. PSF supports two page presentations:

- **Portrait**, or narrow forms, in which the printed page is viewed with the shorter edges of the form at the top and the bottom of the page and the longer edges at the sides of the page
- **Landscape**, or wide forms, in which the printed page is viewed with the longer edges of the form at the top and the bottom of the page and the shorter edges at the sides of the page

All currently marketed PSF-supported printers have the same default media origins. Because the media origin relates to the print direction (ACROSS, DOWN, BACK, and UP), it also is used in determining the page presentation. For continuous-forms printers, the ability to use forms that feed through the printer with either a narrow or a wide leading edge adds another factor to the determination of page presentation.

See Figure 54 on page 158 for examples of media origins and print directions supported by PSF printers.

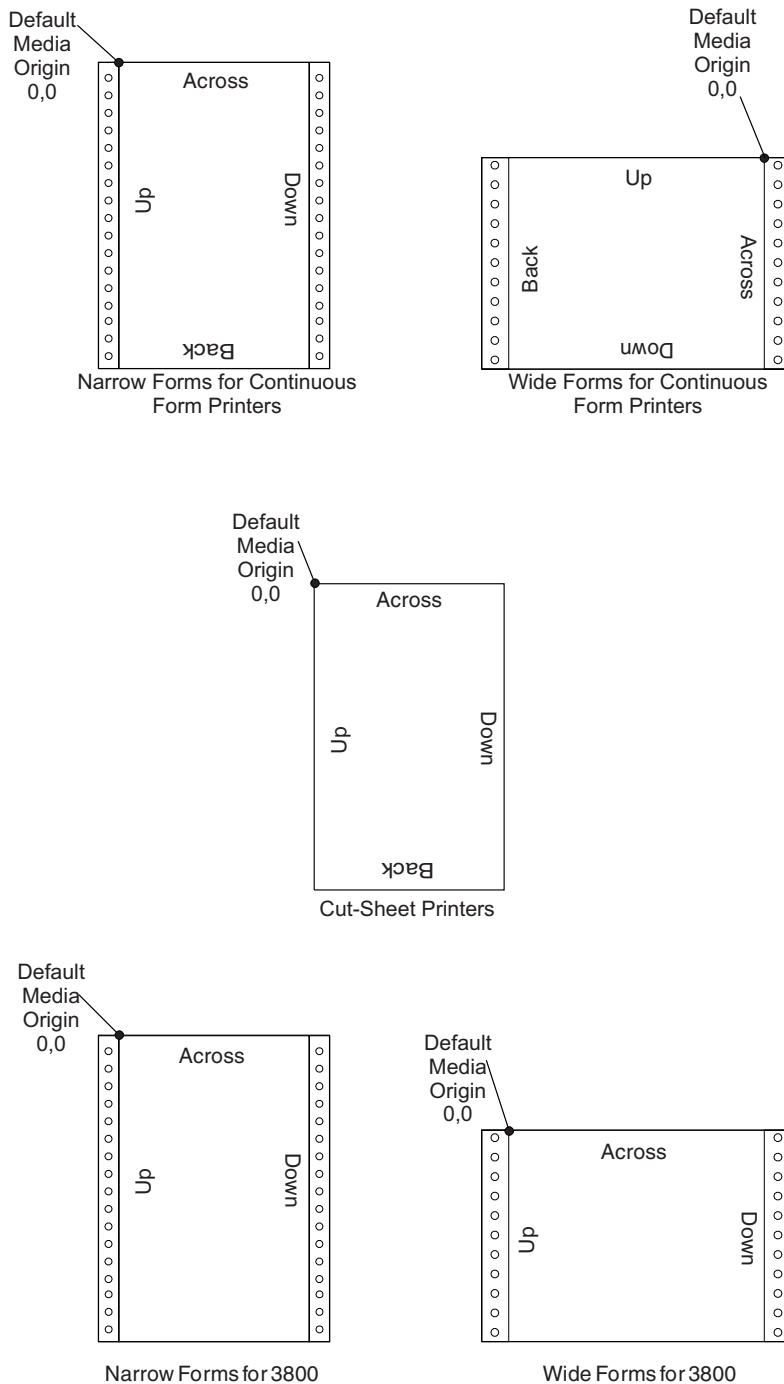


Figure 54. Media Origins and Print Directions for PSF-Supported Printers

Page-presentation and print-direction controls are included in the form definition to allow presentation compatibility across PSF-supported printers. The result of these controls is to change the media origin for the pages printed using the copy group containing the controls. Not all printers support changing of the media origin. The print direction specified in the page definition or in the composed-text data does not need to be changed when a form definition containing these compatibility controls is used. Rather, the print direction in the page definition or composed-text data should be used to determine which print-direction control to specify in the form definition.

You can build form definitions for page-presentation compatibility using PPFA. For more information, refer to *IBM Page Printer Formatting Aid: User's Guide*.

When Not to Use Compatibility Form Definitions

You do not need to use form definitions that contain page-presentation and print-direction controls when you are using:

- Only cut-sheet printers.
- Only narrow forms on a continuous form printer (other than a 3800).
- Only a 3800.
- Print data that is formatted in the BACK or UP direction, which is specified in the page definition or by the program formatting the data.

When To Use Compatibility Form Definitions

You do need to use form definitions that contain page-presentation and print-direction controls when you are:

- Printing data that was formatted for a newer continuous forms printer. See "Example: ACROSS Print Direction with Wide Forms" on page 161.
- Using wide forms on an AFCCCU printer when the print data is formatted in the DOWN print direction.
- Using both narrow and wide forms on an AFCCU continuous forms printer.

Compatibility between an AFCCU continuous forms printer and 3800

PSF provides form definitions that you can use for page-presentation compatibility between a 3800 and an AFCCU continuous forms printer. Figure 55 on page 160 shows the output on the 3800 and on the other printers using these form definitions.

The examples in Figure 55 on page 160 assume that you are using the same forms on the printers; that is, not changing from wide to narrow forms between printers, or from narrow to wide forms between printers. However, you could change forms in any of the four examples without affecting the page presentation of your output as long as the print direction in the form definition matches the print direction in the page definition or composed-text data.

If you migrate an application from one form to another, remember that the top and left margins change places.

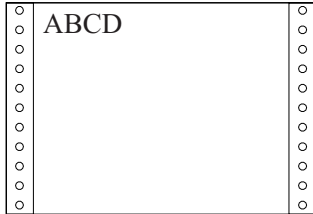
Note: The compatibility form definitions shown in Figure 55 on page 160 specify a page position of 0.0 inch across and 0.5 inch down. This page position is within the printable area of the 3800 as well as that of the AFCCU continuous forms printers.

If you want output formatted for the 3800 (as shown below) to look the same on the AFCCU Continuous Form Printers

use this IBM-supplied form definition:

or create a form definition specifying

the direction specified in the page definition is:



F10101LA

Landscape Presentation
Across Direction

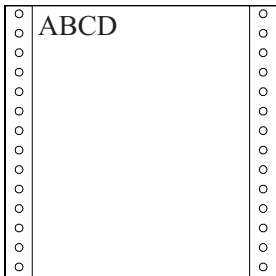
ACROSS



F10101PD

Portrait Presentation
Down Direction

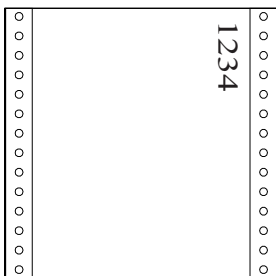
DOWN



F10101PA

Portrait Presentation
Across Direction

ACROSS



F10101LD

Landscape Presentation
Down Direction

DOWN

NOTE: You can use these form definitions for printing on any of the Continuous Form Printers

Figure 55. PSF-Supplied Form Definitions.. These form definitions are for Compatibility Between the 3800 and the AFCCU continuous forms printers. Note that the second and fourth entries use data that is formatted in the DOWN print direction.

Compatibility between Cut-Sheet Printers and AFCCU continuous forms printers

PSF provides form definition F1C10110 for page-presentation compatibility between cut-sheet printers and AFCCU continuous forms printers. See "Example: DOWN Print Direction with Wide Forms" on page 161

on how to use this form definition. “Example: ACROSS Print Direction with Narrow Forms” on page 162 contains an example of when page-presentation controls are not needed for printing the same file on cut-sheet and AFCCU continuous forms printers.

A factor to consider if you are creating your own form definition for compatibility between cut-sheet printers and an AFCCU continuous forms printer is the printable area of the printers.

Example: ACROSS Print Direction with Wide Forms

If your data is formatted in the ACROSS print direction for landscape page presentation, as is commonly used for a 3800, and will be printed on wide forms on an AFCCU continuous forms printers, you must use a form definition with correct page-presentation controls to produce readable output. If not, the print data may go beyond the valid printable area on the AFCCU continuous forms printer, as shown in Figure 56 because the hardware origin for the AFCCU continuous forms printer is different from the hardware origin of the 3800.

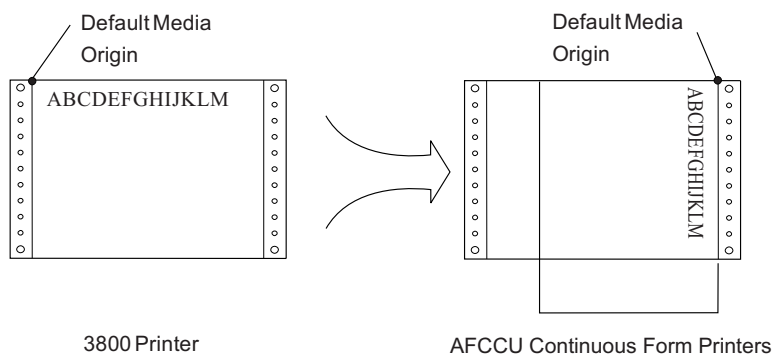


Figure 56. Valid-Printable-Area Error: AFCCU Continuous Forms Printer Output with Incorrect Form Definition

If, however, you use a form definition with the correct page-presentation controls, your output will be printed correctly, as shown in Figure 57. In this example, you could use the PSF-supplied form definition, F10101LA, which specifies a landscape page presentation and an ACROSS print direction. This form definition can also be used for data formatted in an ACROSS print direction to print in the landscape page presentation on narrow forms. The page-presentation controls are not required in this case, but you can now use this form definition regardless of whether the data is to print on wide forms or on narrow forms.

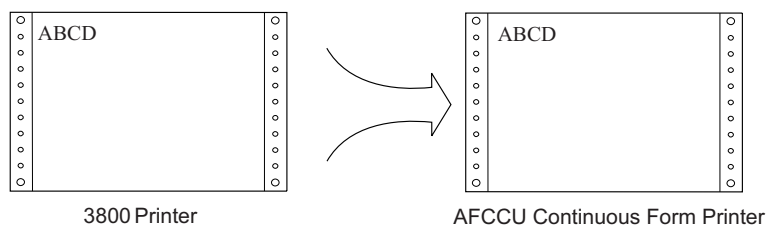


Figure 57. Using PSF Form Definition F10101LA to Prevent Valid-Printable-Area Errors

Example: DOWN Print Direction with Wide Forms

If your data is formatted in the DOWN print direction for landscape page presentation on a cut-sheet printer or on 3800 narrow forms and will be printed on wide forms on an AFCCU continuous forms printer, you must use a form definition with correct page-presentation controls to produce readable output. If not, the data will be printed in the landscape page presentation; however, the data will be upside down, as shown in Figure 58 on page 162, because the hardware origin for an AFCCU continuous forms printer is located on the leading-left corner of the short side of the form, regardless of whether a narrow form or a wide form is used.

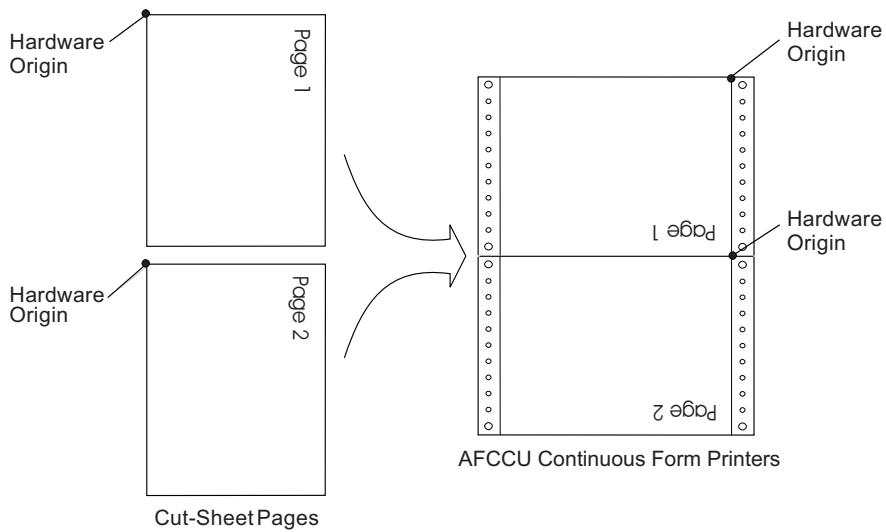


Figure 58. Upside-Down Printing: AFCCU Continuous Forms Printers Output with Incorrect Form Definition

If, however, you use a form definition with the correct page-presentation controls, your output will be printed correctly, as shown in Figure 59. In this example, when migrating from a cut-sheet printer, you can use the PSF-supplied form definition, F1C10110, which specifies the landscape page presentation and the DOWN print direction. If you are migrating from 3800 narrow forms instead of cut sheets, you can use the PSF-supplied form definition, F10101LD, which specifies the landscape page presentation and the DOWN print direction.

The F1C10110 form definition can also be used for data formatted in the DOWN print direction to print on narrow forms on an AFCCU continuous forms printer. The page-presentation controls are not required in this case, but you can now use this form definition regardless of whether the data is to print on wide forms or on narrow forms on the AFCCU continuous forms printer. See “Example: ACROSS Print Direction with Narrow Forms” for more information.

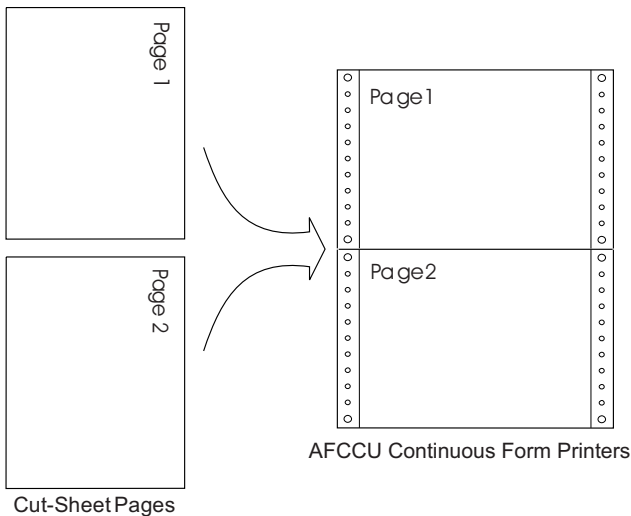


Figure 59. Using PSF Form Definition F1C10110 to Prevent Presentation Errors

Example: ACROSS Print Direction with Narrow Forms

If your data is formatted in the ACROSS print direction for portrait page presentation on a cut-sheet printer and will be printed on narrow forms on an AFCCU continuous forms printer, the form definition you specify

does not need to contain page-presentation controls to produce readable output on these printers. However, you must consider the differences in printable areas between the printers.

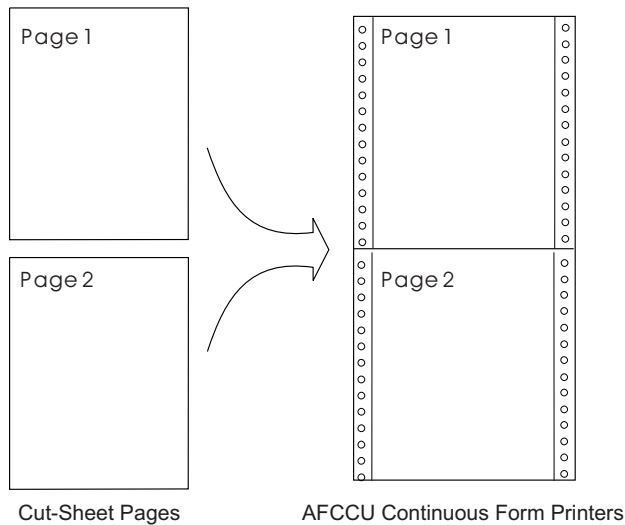


Figure 60. No Compatibility Form Definition Required

When you replace an IBM 3800 printer with IBM's Infoprint 3900 printer or Infoprint 4000 printer, you need to migrate the applications that were running on the 3800 printer. Printing Systems has offerings that assist in migrating the applications.

The 3800-3 and 3800-6 printers have two different operating modes:

- 3800 Advanced Function Presentation (AFP) mode operating under Print Services Facility (PSF)
- 3800-1 compatibility mode (also called "line mode") operating under JES alone.

There are migration considerations for applications running in either of these modes. This document describes the migration considerations and IBM's solution for them. This document covers migration for IBM 3800 printers only. It does not cover migration from OEM printers that emulate 3800 printers. In general, migration issues are the same for functions that faithfully emulate 3800 printer functions. However, OEM printers may include functions that were not supported on 3800. Notably Siemens (now OCE) printers included an "enhanced" line mode, also called "e-mode" that added additional formatting capabilities. These functions are not discussed in this document and are not addressed by the offerings described. If you are migrating from an OEM printer, contact Printing Systems Technical Support for information specific to that printer.

In addition to having a unique non-AFP operating mode, the 3800 printer is the only IBM printer equipped with a forms flash. In either 3800 AFP mode or 3800 line mode, the operator can load what is essentially a large photo negative into the printer, and the printer will flash that negative onto the printed pages. If applications are using a forms flash, this function must be replaced with an Electronic Overlay for AFP applications, or with a flash diskette if the application is migrated to hardware line-mode.

3800 AFP Mode

The 3800-3 printer was the first IBM printer to support AFP. In general, 3800 AFP operates the same as AFP on the newest Infoprint 4000 printers. But there are some differences caused by improvements in implementation over the years. These differences are:

Fonts The 3800 AFP fonts are now called "unbounded box" fonts. All AFP printers since the 3800 use a more advanced format of raster fonts called "bounded box". The 3800 AFP fonts will not print on any other AFP printer. You must have bounded-box fonts instead. If your applications are using only IBM-supplied fonts, there is no problem. All the AFP fonts supplied by IBM for the 3800 are

also supplied in bounded-box format for the 3900 and Infoprint 4000. However, if your applications use customized fonts, these fonts must be converted to bounded-box format to enable printing on a 3900 or 4000.

Form Origin

The 3800 form origin is always top/left - just inside the left tractor strip on the leading edge of the paper. Later AFP continuous-forms printers (3835, 3900, and Infoprint 4000) have the capability to set the form origin to other corners of the sheet, based on PRESENT and DIRECTION parameters in the Form Definition. The default orientation is the top left of the short edge of the physical sheet, which provides compatibility with cut-sheet printers. For forms that are longer than they are wide (for example 11 inches long by 9.5 inches wide), the default origin for these printers is the same as for the 3800. Unfortunately for forms that are wider than they are long (for example 12 inches wide by 8.5 inches long), the default for non-3800 printers is not the same as the 3800 printer origin. One option is to create a form definition for each job which specifies the correct options to place the origin at the 3800 position. Another option is to use a function provided by PSF/MVS 2.2, allowing you to set bits in PSF Exit 7 indicating jobs for which 3800 form origin will be applied. Logic in the exit can select specific job, jobs of certain classes, or any other criteria which could be deduced from the job JCL available to the exit.

3800 Compatibility Mode

No other AFP printers have a 3800-1 compatibility mode. Jobs running in 3800-1 compatibility mode, or "line-mode" as it is sometimes called, usually present the largest challenge to printer upgrade. These jobs use non-AFP resources:

- Forms control buffers (FCB)
- Library characters sets (LCS)
- Graphical character modules (GRAPHMODs)
- Copy modifications (COPYMODs)

In addition, printing of characters is handled differently in line mode for situations where characters print partially off the page, or where characters of different sizes are merged together in the same print line.

It is strongly recommended that customers perform a full conversion of their jobs to AFP to gain the advantages of AFP and simplify their operational procedures. However for those customers who cannot or do not wish to convert their applications, there are two offerings that address 3800 compatibility mode jobs:

Hardware RPQs for specific 3900 and Infoprint 4000 printers

These RPQs allow the printers to emulate 3800 compatibility processing. The RPQs and specific printers are:

- RPQ 8B3997: 3900-01
- RPQ 8B3937: 3900-0W1, 3900-0W3, Infoprint 4000 IS1 (240 dpi and 229 ipm only)

PSF/MVS 2.2 function "3800 Line Mode conversion"

This is a standard feature of PSF/MVS 2.2 that allows PSF to process many 3800 compatibility jobs without change to the job, JCL, or resources.

In general, the hardware RPQ should be used for accounts that do not have PSF, or do not plan to migrate to AFP in the near future. The PSF function should be used for accounts that are currently running PSF but are unable to convert their 3800 line-mode applications to AFP in a timely fashion. However, there are other differences in the characteristics, limitations, and implementation options of these two offerings which may play a factor in the decision of whether to use one or the other of them. The major considerations are:

- 3800 Compatibility Hardware RPQ:
 - If also running AFP jobs, operator must switch printer between AFP mode and line-mode
 - Uses 3800 line-mode resources (character sets, GRAPHMODs, and so forth)
 - Does not require PSF, unless AFP printing is also desired

- Performance limitation for jobs with dense or complex data
- PSF/MVS Line-Mode Function:
 - Can intermix line-mode and AFP job. Do not need to switch printer mode.
 - Requires AFP bounded-box fonts.
 - Requires PSF/MVS.
 - Cannot handle jobs which use COPYMODS.
- Both options:
 - If using 3800 Forms Flash, flashes must be converted
 - 3800 Tape-to-Print feature is not supported
 - Post-Processing equipment, supplies, paper, and attachments must be compatible with the 3900 or 4000 printers

Hardware RPQ for 3800 Compatibility

The 3800 Compatibility Mode RPQ provides a separate microcode load for the supported 3900 or 4000 printer that enables it to run as a 3800-3 or -6 operating in 3800-1 compatibility mode. This RPQ is intended to facilitate the migration of 3800 workloads without the need to convert resources or JCL, or install higher levels of software. The RPQ is supported only when the printer is attached via a S/370 parallel channel. The RPQ is also supported only on operating systems which supported the 3800-3 operating in 3800-1 compatibility mode: MVS and VM.

With this RPQ, the printer operates in either of two modes: normal AFP mode, or 3800 compatibility mode. PSF is not required if the account elects to run only in 3800 compatibility mode. PSF is required for running the printer in normal AFP mode. Details for defining the printer and switching it between Compatibility Mode and AFP mode are included with the RPQ.

With the exception of the forms flash, the 3900 or 4000 operating in compatibility mode should process all 3800 compatibility mode print streams in the same fashion as the 3800. In particular, the FCB, LINECT, COPIES, COPYMOD, SETPRT, GRAPHMOD, MODIFY, CHARS, TRC, OPTCD=J, and line merge functions should operate as usual.

The 3800 Tape-to-Print feature is **NOT** supported with the 3900 or 4000, even with this RPQ installed.

3800 Forms Flash is not physically supported by the 3900 or 4000. Each forms flash must be replaced by an electronic version of the forms flash. A Services Offering is available to create these electronic forms flashes; there is no tool available for this.

The electronic flash is created as a file on a diskette which can be loaded into the printer controller. The flash can be maintained on diskette, or stored on the printer hard drive (up to 8 flash files can be stored on the printer hard drive). Once the electronic flash has been created, operational procedures are similar to those for loading of the forms flash. When the JCL forms flash parameter creates a console message to load the forms flash, the operator will instead enter a console request to load one of the flash files stored in the printer, or load the 3.5-inch diskette containing the electronic overlay in the diskette reader of the 3900 or 4000 controller. Each overlay will be on a separate diskette. The elapsed time for this operator activity should be the same or less than that required for physically loading the forms flash. It is probable that an installation will have several such diskettes, one for each electronic overlay needed. Operational procedures must be updated accordingly, and consideration given to storage and organization of the diskettes. Since the overlay diskettes are conventional DOS diskettes, normal PC utilities can (and should) be used to create backup copies of the overlay diskettes. At least one set should be stored in a safe area outside the immediate printer area for backup purposes. Current practices for backup copies of forms flashes should be reviewed for applicability.

Performance Considerations

The controllers inside the 3800 and the 3900-01 printers were specifically designed to maximize throughput of printer data. By contrast, the 3900-0W1, 3900-0W3, and Infoprint 4000 IS1 printers use as

their controllers IBM RISC processors that are not specialized for printer data. This is not an issue when printing in AFP mode. PSF sends IPDS data to the printer in large blocks which the RISC processors handle quite efficiently. However, in line mode there is no PSF and no IPDS. Instead, the operating system is sending the data in CCW records, one CCW per print record. The RISC processors are not tuned to receiving, processing, and acknowledging many small individual records in a short time frame. The more print records per inch of paper length, the higher processing rate is required.

In general, a job which averages more than 66 print records per 11 inches of paper may not print at rated speed. Many jobs defined with more than 6 lines per inch will average less than 66 records per 11 inches, since records are not printed on every line of every page, and since the 3800 has a 1/2-inch unprintable border at top and bottom of each sheet. However, jobs defined with 6 lines per inch can average more than 66 records per 11 inches if multiple records are printed per line. This can occur if COPYMODS are used, or if a technique called line-merge is used. Line-merge is a 3800 technique for printing multiple records on the same print line. Each of these records requires its own CCW. For this reason, applications should be reviewed carefully, and arrangements can be made with IBM Printing Systems Division to test jobs which might have performance problems.

RPQ Installation Considerations

Procedures for installing, operating, maintaining the new 3900 or 4000 printer must be carefully planned and followed, as with any new printer installation. Some considerations for this step are reviewed in the final section of this document.

- Forms flashes must be converted to electronic overlays, and procedures set in place for usage, storage, organization and back up of the electronic flashes.
- Operators must be trained in the procedures for executing Compatibility Mode functions on the new printer. Documentation on the new operator functions and options is included with the RPQ.
- The RPQ is installed from diskettes by the CE. The diskettes contain microcode for operating compatibility mode and also for new printer console options for managing the printer in Compatibility Mode.
- Critical applications should be tested prior to production cut-over. Adequate lead time should be allowed for overlay generation and testing with applications.

PSF/MVS Line Mode Function

PSF/MVS 2.2 includes a function for 3800 Line Mode Conversion. This capability is documented in the *PSF/MVS 2.2 System Programmer's Guide*, S544-3672. This function allows many jobs which executed in compatibility mode on the 3800-3 or 3800-6 printers to run without application or JCL changes on a 3900, Infoprint 4000, or other AFP printer. This function differs from the hardware RPQs in these significant areas:

- PSF/MVS is required for function. (With the hardware RPQ, PSF is not required if only compatibility mode jobs are being processed. However PSF is required if AFP print jobs are also to be processed.)
- AFP jobs can be intermixed in the job stream with compatibility mode jobs. The printer does not have to be switched between two different modes of operation. This may make it easier for your customer to begin the step toward full AFP implementation.
- AFP fonts must be supplied in place of the 3800 character sets and GRAPHMODs.
- 3800 jobs which use the **COPYMOD** function cannot be processed by PSF Line Mode.

How PSF/MVS Line Mode Works

The PSF/MVS Line Mode function allows PSF to dynamically build and use inline page definition and form definition resources for compatibility mode jobs. The resources are built using information in the job's FCB and JCL parameters for LINECT, COPIES, and FLASH.

PSF accesses the job's FCB in SYS1.IMAGELIB to obtain information for building the page definition. Page height will include the full printable page area to allow room for character ascenders and descenders

that may have been truncated by a 3800 executing in compatibility mode. In compatibility mode, the 3800 will print a partial character, even if the top or bottom of the character extends beyond the printable area. PSF will not print a partial character. If any part of the character is off the page, an error is generated. However, the 3800 had a 1/2-inch unprintable area at top and bottom of the sheet. Including this area in the PSF page size guarantees that characters which could be printed on the 3800 in line mode are also printable under PSF Line Mode.

PSF uses information on the dimensions of paper currently loaded in the printer to create a form definition that contains the presentation options for orienting the print on the paper in the same direction as the 3800 would. The form definition can also contain unique page offsets identified for the job in PSF Exit 4. If a forms flash is used for the job, the form definition will reference an electronic overlay of the same name. The account must ensure that an electronic overlay with the same name (prefixed "O1") has been created and placed in the PSF resource library.

In addition, the account must ensure that all 3800 character sets and GRAPHMODs are available as AFP bounded-box fonts in the PSF resource library. AFP versions of all 3800-supplied character sets are supplied with PSF/MVS. Equivalent AFP fonts must be created or substituted for any non-standard character sets used by compatibility mode print jobs.

The PSF/MVS Line Mode function cannot be used to process jobs which specify the JCL keyword **MODIFY=xxxx**. These jobs use the 3800 COPYMOD function. There is no equivalent for the COPYMOD in PSF Line Mode capability. Jobs using COPYMODS must be converted to AFP, or printed using the hardware 3800 compatibility RPQ. If a job using COPYMODs is encountered, PSF will issue an error message and place the job on HOLD.

You should also be alert for jobs which use a special post-processing routine and character set to create the 3800-1 version of rotated print. While it may be possible to convert the rotated character set for the AFP printer, it is much easier to remove the rotate post processing step and use standard AFP fonts and AFP capabilities to rotate the job.

Invoking PSF/MVS Line Mode Function

The PSF/MVS Line Mode function is triggered through PSF/MVS Exit 4 for jobs which print through the JES Spool. If accounts are using PSF Direct Printing, instead of using the JES Spool, Line Mode can be enabled for Direct Printing using Exit 14. Samples APSUX04X and APSUX14X are provided in the SAMPLIB shipped with PSF/MVS. For simplicity, for the remainder of this document we will reference only Exit 4. Accounts using PSF Direct Printing will find similar functions available in Exit 14.

To activate Line Mode processing, in Exit 4 you indicate which jobs should be processed as Line Mode. Since the exit has access to all the JCL parameters for the job, you may choose to identify jobs based on any of these parameters, for example: Job Name or Job Class. You may also set up a table in the exit to indicate special print offsets for different jobs based on any of the parameters available to the exit. This allows PSF Line Mode function to emulate the print offsets that could be entered by 3800 operators for matching print to special forms.

PSF/MVS Line Mode will provide compatibility mode processing only for those jobs selected by Exit 4. However, not all jobs selected by the Exit will be processed in Line Mode. Any job that has a PAGEDEF or FORMDEF parameter coded in its JCL will be ignored for compatibility mode processing. PSF will assume that the job has been designed for AFP printing and process it as a normal AFP job.

As noted above, the PSF Line Mode function cannot process jobs that use COPYMODs. If a job which specifies MODIFY in the JCL is identified in Exit 4 for line mode processing, PSF will issue an error message and request that the job be held by the system. Note that if the same job were not identified in Exit 4, it would print as a normal AFP job with the MODIFY parameter simply ignored.

Considerations for Line-Merge Jobs

Additional processing is needed for jobs which use an application technique called line-merge to mix character sets on the same print line. On the 3800 this is done by coding Table Reference Characters (TRCs) and a "print-no-space" carriage control byte in the print records. This coding will also cause a line merge on an AFP printer; however, the line merge operates differently. The 3800 merges character per character, the AFP printers merge pel per pel. If the merge occurs between characters of different widths (pitches), the resulting print position will be different on an AFP printer than on the 3800.

The PSF Line Merge Function provides special processing for jobs that use line merge. If Exit 4 indicates that the job uses Line Merge, PSF will process every record of job (instead of just the first record in the data set) examine each record for line merge, and reproduce the 3800 line merge positioning. Because of the extra processing involved, PSF only does this for jobs which indicate in Exit 4 that the processing is needed. If you do not know which of its jobs use line merge, a good approach is to examine print job JCL to identify jobs that are using multiple fonts and therefore may be mixing these fonts on a printline using line merge. These jobs would require both of the following JCL parameters:

- OPTCD=J which indicates that table reference characters (TRCs) are used to select different fonts for different records.
- CHARS=(xxxx,yyyy,....) indicating multiple character sets.

If all the character sets listed in the CHARS parameter are fixed pitch and all of them have the same pitch, such as GT10 and GB10, you will not have a problem. The line merge will work the same on the AFP printer, without extra processing by PSF Line Mode. But if any of the character sets in the CHARS parameter are mixed pitch, such as the tri-pitch BITR, or if any two have different pitches, such as GT10 and GT12, then you have a potential line-merge problem. For these it would be wise to indicate additional Line Merge processing.

Printers Supported by PSF/MVS Line Mode

PSF/MVS Line Mode was designed for processing 3800 jobs on continuous form AFP printers such as 3835, 3900, and Infoprint 4000. It can also be used to print 3800 jobs on AFP cut-sheet printers, if the print jobs will fit on the cut-sheet paper. While 3800 jobs that printed on 8.5 inch wide paper should easily fit on cut sheet paper, those designed for 12 inch or 14 inch paper probably will not. PSF/MVS Line Mode will not rotate 3800 jobs on cut-sheet printers to try and make them fit the paper.

PSF/MVS Line Mode will not support printing on a 3800 printer. Some accounts may wish to transfer jobs from compatibility mode to AFP mode on a 3800 printer. However because of limitations of the 3800, the PSF/MVS Line Mode function will not process jobs destined for a 3800 printer. An error message will be issued. PSF will terminate processing of the job and request that the job be held by the system.

The PSF/MVS Line Mode function can be used with Cut-Sheet Emulation. Cut-Sheet Emulation is an automatic 2-UP provided by Infoprint 4000 printers in conjunction with PSF. Line Mode jobs can also be printed in duplex, on a duplex printer. A special bit must be set in Exit 4 to indicate that duplexing is desired.

Implementing PSF/MVS Line Mode

The following steps must be taken to use PSF/MVS Line Mode processing:

- Install PSF/MVS 2.2.
- Ensure AFP fonts are available in the PSF resource library for all 3800 LCSs and GRAPHMODs used by the jobs being processed.
- Ensure Electronic Overlays are created and available in the PSF resource library for all 3800 forms flashes used.
- Screen the 3800 jobs to identify any using COPYMODS or merging lines with different sized characters.
 - COPYMODS cannot be processed using PSF Line Mode
 - Jobs merging fonts of different sizes must be flagged for extra processing by PSF.

- Modify PSF/MVS Exit 4 to indicate jobs that require Line Mode Processing and those that require additional line-merge processing.

Now you are ready to process 3800 compatibility mode jobs on your AFP printer.

3900 or 4000 Installation Considerations

As with installation of any new printer, particularly one in the 3900 or 4000 class, careful preparation must be made for installing, operating, and maintaining the new printer. The IBM *Introduction and Planning Guide* for the printer should be carefully reviewed, and installation checklists should be carefully followed. The list below cannot be considered a comprehensive list. However, it does point out some of the issues to be considered when upgrading from a 3800 printer to a 3900 or 4000.

- If installing the 3900 or 4000 for use only with the Hardware RPQ for 3800 compatibility, the printer would be defined to the system as a 3800 Line Printer. System definitions would not need to be changed. However if the new printer will be used to process AFP print jobs as well as compatibility print jobs, it must also be defined to the operating system and to PSF as a 3900 or 4000 printer.
- Review attachment requirements for the new printer. For example, Infoprint 4000 printers and the 3900 wide and duplex printers require a minimum data streaming rate of 1.9 MB, and are not supported on 3044 Model 1 channel extenders. If you are using non-IBM channel extenders, check with your channel-extender vendor regarding support for the new printer.
- The specifications of all paper stocks used should be reviewed to insure they meet the specifications for the new printer. For example, the 3800 could accept paper weights as low as fifteen pounds; the lowest weight for the 3900 is sixteen pounds.
- Supplies (toner, developer, and so forth) must be ordered for the new machine.
- BTS equipment must be installed or modified as needed.

Appendix B. Font Information for IPDS Printers

Font Terminology, Names of Font Groups, and Font Structure

The first few pages of this appendix describe font terminology, the names of groups of fonts, and font structure. The appendix then lists the fonts available in the printers that contain resident fonts.

IBM ships fonts in a product called the IBM AFP Font Collection. To learn more about the AFP Font collection, refer to the *Fonts Summary for AFP Font Collection* and the *Technical Reference for IBM Expanded Core Fonts*. The AFP Font Collection contains the following fonts:

- IBM Expanded Core Fonts
 - Boldface
 - BookMaster Latin1
 - BookMaster Specials
 - Courier
 - Courier APL2
 - Gothic Katakana
 - Gothic Text
 - Helvetica
 - IBM Logo
 - Letter Gothic
 - OCR(OCR-A and OCR-B)
 - Prestige
 - Times New Roman

IBM Font Structure and Terminology

In IBM font terminology, a font has three components:

- Coded font
- Font character set
- Code page

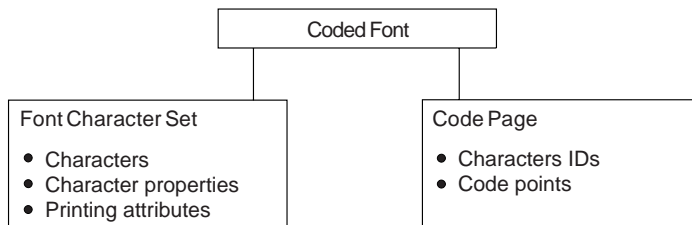


Figure 61. Font Components

Coded Font

A *coded font* translates your request for type (for example, text you previously entered at a computer terminal) into characters for printing. A coded font, which associates a specific code page with a specific font character, consists of two parts:

- References to specific font character sets
- References to specific code pages

1. A pel is a pixel, picture element, or dot. The sequence of dots that form a character is called a *raster pattern*. The number of dots per inch that a printer generates is called the :hp1.print resolution:ehp1. or pel density. A resolution of 240 pels means that a printer prints 240 pels per inch both vertically and horizontally, or 57 pels per square inch (240 x 240).

A character must be included in the specified font character set and listed on the specified code page before it can be printed.

Font Character Set

A *font character set* contains the characters of a single type family, typeface, and type size. In addition, a font character set specifies *character properties* and printing attributes.

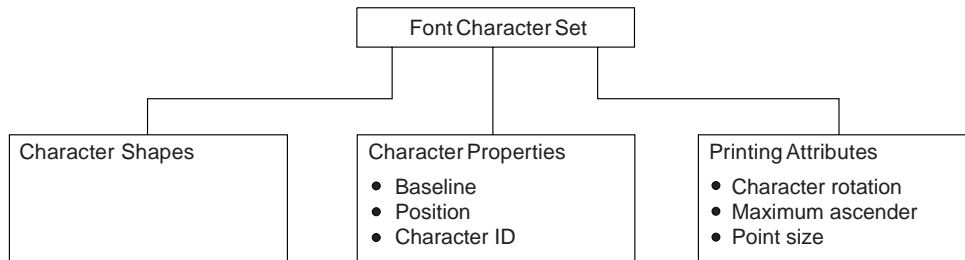


Figure 62. Composition of a Font Character Set

Characters, Character Properties, and Printing Attributes: *Characters* are the letters, numerals, punctuation marks, or other symbols of a font.

Character properties describe how a character is positioned relative to the characters around it. Some character properties include the following:

- The baseline of a character, showing its alignment on the writing line
- The dimensions of space in which the character is printed
- The position of the character within that space
- The identifier of the character (the character ID or graphic character ID)

Each character is assigned a character ID; for example, the character A (uppercase A) is assigned the character ID LA020000.

The purpose of a character ID is to distinguish the character from other, similar characters. For example, the following characters look similar; however, they are different and are assigned different character IDs:

Minus sign (–)

Character ID SA000000

Hyphen (-)

Character ID SP100000

Em dash (—)

Character ID SM900000

The *printing attributes* define how the font character set will be printed. Some printing attributes include rotation of characters, maximum ascender, and point size.

Code Page

A *code page* maps each character of text to the characters in a font character set. Figure 63 on page 173 shows how a code page maps text to the characters in a font character set. As you enter your text at a computer terminal, each keyboard character is translated into a *code point*. When the text is printed, each code point is matched to a character ID on the code page you specified. The character ID is then matched to the image of the character in the font character set you specified. The image in the character set is the image that is printed.

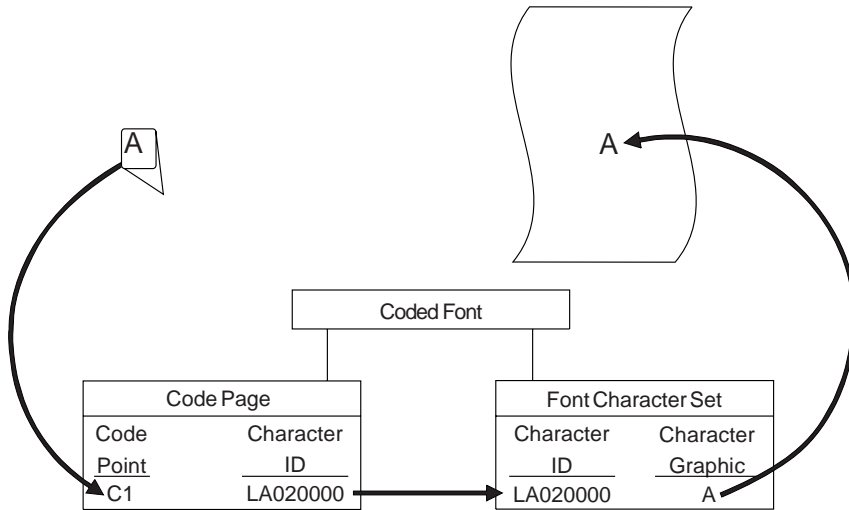


Figure 63. Translation of a Keyboard Character into a Printed Character

A character ID is an 8-byte character data string. A code point is an 8-bit binary number representing one of 256 potential characters (the maximum number of characters available on a code page). Code points are usually shown as hexadecimal representations of their binary values.

Binary

11000001

Decimal

193

Hexadecimal

C1

Figure 64 on page 174 shows an example of part of a code page. When the printer receives hexadecimal code point C1 for the code page shown (code page T1V10037), it prints an uppercase A (character ID LA020000).

T1V10037 Country Extended: United States, Canada

| CPGID | GCSGID | Undefined Code Point | Type |
|-------|--------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 37 | 697 | SP010000 | ExpCore 4028 Compatibility Licensed Program |

| Hex Codes 1st→ 2nd↓ | 4- | 5- | 6- | 7- | 8- | 9- | A- | B- | C- | D- | E- | F- |
|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| -0 | SP010000 | & SM030000 | - SP100000 | ø LO610000 | Ø LO620000 | ° SM190000 | μ SM170000 | ^ SD150000 | { SM110000 | } SM140000 | \ SM070000 | 0 ND100000 |
| -1 | SP300000 | é LE110000 | / SP120000 | É LE120000 | a LA010000 | j LJ010000 | ~ SD190000 | Œ SC020000 | A LA020000 | J LJ020000 | ÷ SA060000 | 1 ND010000 |
| -2 | â LA150000 | ê LA150000 | Â LA160000 | Ê LE160000 | b LB010000 | k LK010000 | s LS010000 | ¥ SC050000 | B LB020000 | K LK020000 | S LS020000 | 2 ND020000 |
| -3 | ä LA170000 | ë LE170000 | Ä LA180000 | Ë LE180000 | c LC010000 | l LL010000 | t LT010000 | · SD630000 | C LC020000 | L LL020000 | T LT020000 | 3 ND030000 |
| -4 | à LA130000 | è LE130000 | À LA140000 | È LE140000 | d LD010000 | m LM010000 | u LU010000 | © SM520000 | D LD020000 | M LM020000 | U LU020000 | 4 ND040000 |
| -5 | á LA110000 | í LI110000 | Á LA120000 | Í LI120000 | e LE010000 | n LN010000 | v LV010000 | § SM240000 | E LE020000 | N LN020000 | V LV020000 | 5 ND050000 |
| -6 | ã LA190000 | î LI150000 | Ã LA200000 | Î LI160000 | f LF010000 | o LO010000 | w LW010000 | ¶ SM250000 | F LF020000 | O LO020000 | W LW020000 | 6 ND060000 |

Figure 64. Part of IBM Code Page T1V10037

Different Code Pages

Code pages accommodate various national languages by using characters and special symbols appropriate to the language. Code pages can have identical character IDs assigned to different code points.

For example, the character é (lowercase e accent acute, character ID LE110000) has the following code point assignments in two different code pages:

- Hexadecimal code point 51 in code page T1V10037 (Country Extended: United States, Canada, Figure 64)
- Hexadecimal code point 5A in code page T1V10280 (Country Extended: Italy)

Global Resource Identifier (GRID)

You might encounter the term *GRID* in other Advanced Function Presentation (AFP) publications. A GRID, an acronym for Global Resource Identifier, is used by AFP printers to identify resident fonts, to perform font substitution, and by some operating systems and applications to identify fonts used in text. A GRID is often used by PSF to determine if a printer-resident font is available for activation or if a font must be downloaded.

GRID values are also used in font substitution scenarios. For example, if a font is requested that is not resident in the printer, nor is it resident on the host system, an alternate font may be selected for download (or activation) by PSF. GRID tables are built into PSF for this purpose. These tables are also used to cross-reference font resources names and GRID values.

A GRID is similar to a coded font in that it identifies a character set, a code page, and the size of the characters to be printed. It does this by using the following four identifiers that can be used to uniquely identify font resources:

- A Font Global Identifier (FGID) is used to identify a typeface. For example, FGID 2305 is assigned to Helvetica Bold. Note that FGID 2305 applies to ANY Helvetica Bold typeface regardless of the language complement being used.
- A Code Page Global Identifier (CPGID) is used to identify a code page. For example, CPGID 1148 is used to identify code page T1001148.
- A Graphic Character Set Global Identifier (GCSGID) is used to identify a unique collection (list) of characters and is how the language complement is specified. For example, GCSGID 2039 is used to identify the characters required to support the Latin1 language complement. Not that GCSGID 2309 applies to ANY Latin1 language complement regardless of the typeface being used.

Since a GCSGID simply identifies a list of characters, it can (and is) used in both character sets and code pages. When used in a code page, the GCSGID identifies the list of characters contained in the code page and is the value most commonly used in a GRID. The printers and PSF have GCSGID superset/subset tables that are used to resolve the requested GCSGID down to a font that supports it.

- Font Width is used to provide size criteria. The FGID and GCSGID together provide enough information to determine the typeface and language complement. Font width indicates which point size to use. Font width, however, is not a point size value. It is based on 1440ths, a unit of measure commonly used by printers and formatters.

GRID Width Calculations: For uniformly spaced fonts, the font width calculation is 1440 divided by the pitch. Pitch is the number of characters that can fit in 1 horizontal inch.

Table 106. Font Width Calculation for Uniformly Spaced Fonts

| Width | Pitch | Calculation |
|-------|-------|-------------|
| 240 | 6 | 1440/6 |
| 168 | 8.57 | 1440/8.57 |
| 144 | 10 | 1440/10 |
| 120 | 12 | 1440/12 |
| 108 | 13.3 | 1440/13.3 |
| 96 | 15 | 1440/15 |
| 84 | 17.1 | 1440/17.1 |
| 72 | 20 | 1440/20 |

For mixed-pitch character sets, the width calculation is the width of the 12–pitch space character (that is, 1440 divided by 12).

Table 107. Font Width Calculation for Mixed-Pitch Character Sets

| Width | Pitch | Calculation |
|-------|-------|-------------|
| 120 | 12 | 1440/12 |

For proportionally spaced (typographic) fonts, the width calculation is one-third the point size converted to 1440ths of an inch. There are approximately 72 points to 1 inch or 20 1440ths per point.

Table 108. Font Width Calculation for Proportionally Spaced Fonts

| Width | Points | Calculation |
|-------|--------|-------------|
| 40 | 6 | (6x20)/3 |
| 47 | 7 | (7x20)/3 |
| 53 | 8 | (8x20)/3 |
| 60 | 9 | (9x20)/3 |
| 67 | 10 | (10x20)/3 |

Table 108. Font Width Calculation for Proportionally Spaced Fonts (continued)

| Width | Points | Calculation |
|-------|--------|-------------|
| 73 | 11 | (11x20)/3 |
| 80 | 12 | (12x20)/3 |
| 93 | 14 | (14x20)/3 |
| 107 | 16 | (16x20)/3 |
| 120 | 18 | (18x20)/3 |
| 133 | 20 | (20x20)/3 |
| 160 | 24 | (24x20)/3 |
| 200 | 30 | (30x20)/3 |
| 240 | 36 | (36x20)/3 |
| 320 | 48 | (48x20)/3 |
| 400 | 60 | (60x20)/3 |
| 480 | 72 | (72x20)/3 |

Tables Listing Printer-Resident Fonts

This rest of this appendix contains tables listing fonts resident in specific printers. These fonts can be shipped on diskettes, cartridges, font cards, in printer microcode, or in some type of printer storage, depending on the printer. With PSF/MVS and PSF/VSE, you can use a utility to mark host versions of these fonts that will allow PSF to activate the fonts resident in the printers. On PSF/MVS, the utility is called APSRMARK; on PSF/VSE, APTRMARK. PSF/VM, PSF/400, and PSF/6000 use tables to map resident fonts to the equivalent host fonts, providing access to the resident fonts on select printers.

Notes:

1. The lists of printer resident fonts in this appendix may not be complete. Your printer may contain fonts not listed here. Also, your PSF libraries may contain host-equivalent fonts that are not resident in your printer. In either case, using fonts not listed in this section may produce unexpected results.
2. Some of the fonts listed in these tables are IBM font licensed programs, which may or may not be installed in your PSF font libraries. Before marking a font on PSF/MVS with APSRMARK or on PSF/VSE with APTRMARK, ensure that the host-equivalent font is available.
3. For some of the bold fonts listed, the bold printing is done by your printer. Refer to your printer publications for more information.
4. Fonts shipped with the IBM AFP Font Collection are already marked and do not have to be marked using APSRMARK or APTRMARK, thereby enabling you to use the fonts resident in the AFCCU printers.

Abbreviations Used in the Tables

The tables throughout this appendix use the following abbreviations:

- DEC** Decimal (a numbering system based on 10)
FGID Font typeface global identifier
FW Font width (the width of the space character in 1/1440ths-inch units)
GCSGID Graphic character set global identifier
CPGID Code page global identifier
GRID Global resource identifier
HEX Hexadecimal (a numbering system based on 16)
IB Italic Bold
IM Italic Medium
- 176** Printer Information

Point Vertical height (number in 1/72 of an inch)
PPDS Page Printer Data Stream
PS Proportional Space Font
RB Roman Bold
RIDF Resource ID Format
RL Roman Light
RM Roman Medium
RT Resource Type
TYPO Typographic spacing (proportionally spaced, measured vertically in points [1/72 of an inch])

Fonts Resident in the AFCCU Printers

This section lists the resident fonts and code pages for the AFCCU printers: Infoprint 60, Infoprint 62, Infoprint 3000, Infoprint 4000, and Infoprint Color 130 Plus. The AFCCU printers support the resident fonts as *Type 1 scalable outline fonts*, depending on the PSF support. The default font is Courier Roman Medium 12 pitch (10 point), using code page 500, version 2. The GRID for the default font is FGID=416, GCSGID=1269, CPGID=500, and font width=120. The host equivalents of the AFCCU resident fonts are shipped in the IBM AFP Font Collection and are marked PUBLIC, so that on PSF/MVS 2.2.0 with APAR OW08340, you can use them to activate the printer resident fonts. You do not need to run any APSRMARK jobs to mark them.

If the IBM AFP Font Collection is not installed, you can run the following APSRMARK jobs on PSF/MVS to mark the host equivalents of the resident fonts: APSWMCPG, APSWMCR, APSWMHLV, APSWMTNR, and APSW4028.

Activating Resident Fonts in the AFCCU Printers

Use one of the following IPDS commands to activate resident fonts in the AFCCU printers.

Load Font Equivalence Command: The Load Font Equivalence (LFE) command maps font local identifiers specified in text, graphics, or bar code data, to font Host Assigned IDs (HAIDs) and to Global Resource IDs (GRIDs). If the GRID specified in the LFE command matches a GRID contained in the printer, the font is activated.

Activate Resource (Load Resource Equivalence) Command: The Activate Resource (AR) command (previously known as Load Resource Equivalence) maps Host Assigned IDs to global names of another format. The format for the global name is identified by a resource type and resource ID combination. If the printer contains a font that matches the global name in the AR command, that font is activated.

Table 109 shows the combinations of resource types (RT) and resource ID formats (RIDF) supported by the AFCCU printers.

Table 109. Resource Type and Resource ID Formats

| Resource Type | RT HEX | Resource ID Format | RIDF HEX |
|-------------------------------|--------|----------------------|----------|
| Single-Byte Coded Raster Font | X'01' | IBM GRID | X'03' |
| Single-Byte Coded Raster Font | X'01' | MVS Host Available | X'06' |
| Code Page | X'06' | IBM Grid | X'03' |
| Font Character Set | X'07' | Coded Font Format | X'07' |
| Single-Byte Coded Font Index | X'08' | IBM GRID | X'03' |
| Single-Byte Coded Font Index | X'08' | MVS Host Unalterable | X'06' |
| Coded Font | X'10' | Coded Font Format | X'07' |
| Coded Font | X'10' | IBM GRID | X'03' |

IBM Expanded Core Fonts Resident in the AFCCU Printers

The Expanded Core Fonts shown in Table 110 through Table 116 on page 180 are supported as resident, scalable fonts. These tables show the valid Font Global ID (FGID) and code pages for each font.

XOA-RRL Replies for Font Character Sets: The resident font set supports a font character set of any valid font width when queried as an individual font character set. When queried for a list of font character sets, using Execute Order Anytime (XOA)-Request Resource List (RRL), the resident character sets are reported with a font width of zero. A font width of zero indicates that the font is scalable. All of the following fonts are scalable.

See Table 118 on page 181 for the code pages associated with these fonts.

Table 110. Arabic Expanded Core Fonts

| Typeface | FGID HEX | FGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Font Character Set |
|----------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Boutros Typing Roman Bold | 01A4 | 0420 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZ4404 |
| Boutros Typing Roman Medium | 01A0 | 0416 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZ4204 |
| Boutros Typing Italic Bold | 01AC | 0428 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZ4504 |
| Boutros Typing Italic Medium | 01A8 | 0424 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZ4304 |
| ITC Boutros Modern Rokaa Italic Bold | 0903 | 2307 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZH504 |
| ITC Boutros Modern Rokaa Italic Medium | 0902 | 2306 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZH304 |
| ITC Boutros Modern Rokaa Roman Bold | 0901 | 2305 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZH404 |
| ITC Boutros Modern Rokaa Roman Medium | 0900 | 2304 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZH204 |
| ITC Boutros Setting Italic Bold | 0907 | 2311 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZN504 |
| ITC Boutros Setting Italic Medium | 0906 | 2310 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZN304 |
| ITC Boutros Setting Roman Bold | 0905 | 2309 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZN404 |
| ITC Boutros Setting Roman Medium | 0904 | 2308 | 04F0 | 1264 | CZN204 |

Table 111. Hebrew Expanded Core Fonts

| Typeface | FGID HEX | FGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Font Character Set |
|---------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Narkissim Italic Bold | 0907 | 2311 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZN505 |
| Narkissim Italic Medium | 0906 | 2310 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZN305 |
| Narkissim Roman Bold | 0905 | 2309 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZN405 |
| Narkissim Roman Medium | 0904 | 0424 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZN205 |
| Narkiss Tam Italic Bold | 0903 | 2307 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZH505 |
| Narkiss Tam Italic Medium | 0902 | 2306 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZH305 |
| Narkiss Tam Roman Bold | 0901 | 2305 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZH405 |
| Narkiss Tam Roman Medium | 0900 | 2304 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZH205 |
| Shalom Italic Bold | 01AC | 0428 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZ4505 |
| Shalom Italic Medium | 01A8 | 0424 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZ4305 |
| Shalom Roman Bold | 01A4 | 0420 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZ4405 |
| Shalom Roman Medium | 01A0 | 0416 | 04F1 | 1265 | CZ4205 |

Table 112. Latin1 Expanded Core Fonts

| Typeface | FGID HEX | FGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Font Character Set |
|-------------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Boldface | 4F00 | 20224 | 07F7 | 2039 | CZ8400 |
| Courier Italic Bold | 01AC | 0428 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4500 |
| Courier Italic Medium | 01A8 | 0424 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4300 |
| Courier Roman Bold | 01A4 | 0420 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4400 |
| Courier Roman Medium | 01A0 | 0416 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4200 |
| Gothic Text | 0130 | 304 | 07F7 | 2039 | CZ6200 |
| Helvetica Italic Bold | 0903 | 2307 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH500 |
| Helvetica Italic Medium | 0902 | 2304 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH300 |
| Helvetica Roman Bold | 0901 | 0428 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH400 |
| Helvetica Roman Medium | 0900 | 0424 | 04F5 | 2039 | CZH200 |
| Letter Gothic | 0190 | 400 | 04F7 | 2039 | CZ5200 |
| Letter Gothic Bold | 0194 | 404 | 04F7 | 2039 | CZ5400 |
| Prestige | 01B0 | 432 | 04F7 | 2039 | CZ7200 |
| Prestige Bold | 013E | 318 | 04F7 | 2039 | CZ7400 |
| Prestige Italic | 013F | 319 | 04F7 | 2039 | CZ7300 |
| Times New Roman Bold | 0905 | 2309 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN400 |
| Times New Roman Italic Bold | 0907 | 2311 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN500 |
| Times New Roman Italic Medium | 0906 | 2310 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN300 |
| Times New Roman Medium | 0904 | 2308 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN200 |

Table 113. Latin2/3/5 Expanded Core Fonts

| Typeface | FGID HEX | FGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Font Character Set |
|-------------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Courier Italic Bold | 01AC | 0428 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4502 |
| Courier Italic Medium | 01A8 | 0424 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4302 |
| Courier Roman Bold | 01A4 | 0420 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4402 |
| Courier Roman Medium | 01A0 | 0416 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4202 |
| Helvetica Italic Bold | 0903 | 2307 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH500 |
| Helvetica Italic Medium | 0902 | 2306 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH302 |
| Helvetica Roman Bold | 0901 | 2305 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH402 |
| Helvetica Roman Medium | 0900 | 2304 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH202 |
| Times New Roman Bold | 0905 | 2309 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN402 |
| Times New Roman Italic Bold | 0907 | 2311 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN502 |
| Times New Roman Italic Medium | 0906 | 2310 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN302 |
| Times New Roman Medium | 0904 | 2308 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN202 |

Table 114. Latin4 Expanded Core Fonts

| Typeface | FGID HEX | FGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Font Character Set |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Courier Italic Bold | 01AC | 0428 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4507 |

Table 114. Latin4 Expanded Core Fonts (continued)

| Typeface | FGID HEX | FGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Font Character Set |
|-------------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Courier Italic Medium | 01A8 | 0424 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4307 |
| Courier Roman Bold | 01A4 | 0420 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4407 |
| Courier Roman Medium | 01A0 | 0416 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZ4207 |
| Helvetica Italic Bold | 0903 | 2307 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH507 |
| Helvetica Italic Medium | 0902 | 2306 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH307 |
| Helvetica Roman Bold | 0901 | 2305 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH407 |
| Helvetica Roman Medium | 0900 | 2304 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZH207 |
| Times New Roman Bold | 0905 | 2309 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN407 |
| Times New Roman Italic Bold | 0907 | 2311 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN507 |
| Times New Roman Italic Medium | 0906 | 2310 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN307 |
| Times New Roman Medium | 0904 | 2308 | 04F5 | 1269 | CZN207 |

Table 115. Symbols Expanded Core Fonts

| Typeface | FGID HEX | FGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Font Character Set |
|------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Courier Roman Bold | 01A4 | 0420 | 04FB | 1275 | CZ4401 |
| Courier Roman Medium | 01A0 | 0416 | 04FB | 1275 | CZ4201 |
| Helvetica Roman Bold | 0901 | 2305 | 04FB | 1275 | CZH401 |
| Helvetica Roman Medium | 0900 | 2304 | 04FB | 1275 | CZH201 |
| Times New Roman Bold | 0905 | 2309 | 04FB | 1275 | CZN401 |
| Times New Roman Bold | 0904 | 2308 | 04FB | 1275 | CZN201 |

Table 116. Cyrillic Greek Expanded Core Fonts

| Typeface | FGID HEX | FGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Font Character Set |
|-------------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Courier Italic Bold | 01AC | 0428 | 0514 | 1300 | CZ4503 |
| Courier Italic Medium | 01A8 | 0424 | 0514 | 1300 | CZ4303 |
| Courier Roman Bold | 01A4 | 0420 | 0514 | 1300 | CZ4403 |
| Courier Roman Medium | 01A0 | 0416 | 0514 | 1300 | CZ4203 |
| Helvetica Italic Bold | 0903 | 2307 | 0514 | 1300 | CZH503 |
| Helvetica Italic Medium | 0902 | 2306 | 0514 | 1300 | CZH303 |
| Helvetica Roman Bold | 0901 | 2305 | 0514 | 1300 | CZH403 |
| Helvetica Roman Medium | 0900 | 2304 | 0514 | 1300 | CZH203 |
| Times New Roman Bold | 0905 | 2309 | 0514 | 1300 | CZN403 |
| Times New Roman Italic Bold | 0907 | 2311 | 0514 | 1300 | CZN503 |
| Times New Roman Italic Medium | 0906 | 2310 | 0514 | 1300 | CZN303 |
| Times New Roman Medium | 0904 | 2308 | 0514 | 1300 | CZN203 |

Table 117 lists the scalable OCR, APL, and Katakana fonts resident in the AFCCU printers.

Table 117. OCR, APL, and Katakana Fonts Resident in the AFCCU Printers

| Typeface | FGID HEX | FGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | CPGID HEX | CPGID DEC | Font Character Set |
|-----------------|----------|----------|------------|------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| APL | 0133 | 307 | 0518 | 1304 | 125, 136, 38E | 293, 310, 910 | CZ420P |
| APL Bold | 0142 | 322 | 0518 | 1304 | 125, 136, 38E | 293, 310, 910 | CZ440P |
| OCR A | 0131 | 305 | 03C8 | 968 | 36C, 37C | 876,892 | CZ4407 |
| OCR B | 0132 | 306 | 03C9 | 969 | 36D, 37D | 877, 893 | CZ4207 |
| Katakana Gothic | 0130 | 304 | 051A | 1306 | 122, 381, 403, 411 | 290, 897, 1027, 1041 | CZH507 |

Code Pages for the IBM Expanded Core Fonts: Table 118 lists the code pages used with the resident IBM Expanded Core Fonts. Although all the IBM Expanded Core fonts code pages are referenced in Table 118, the AFCCU printers support only the Latin1 Country Extended, Latin1 EBCDIC Publishing, Latin1 ASCII, and Latin EBCDIC DCF code pages.

Table 118. Code Pages for the Expanded Core Fonts

| Language Supported | CPGID HEX | CPGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Code Page Name |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|----------------|
| Latin 1 Country Extended Code Pages: | | | | | |
| US English, Canadian English, Canadian French, Dutch, Brazilian Portuguese, Portuguese | 0025 | 0037 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10037 |
| German | 0111 | 0273 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10273 |
| Belgian | 0112 | 0274 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10274 |
| Brazilian | 0113 | 0275 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10275 |
| Danish, Norwegian | 0113 | 0277 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10277 |
| Finnish, Swedish | 0116 | 0278 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10278 |
| Italian | 0118 | 0280 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10280 |
| Japanese | 0119 | 0281 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10281 |
| Portuguese | 011A | 0282 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10282 |
| Castillian Spanish, Latin American Spanish | 011C | 0284 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10284 |
| UK English | 011D | 0285 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10285 |
| French, Catalan | 0129 | 0297 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10297 |
| Multinational, Belgium French, Belgium Dutch, Swiss French, Swiss German, Swiss Italian | 01F4 | 0500 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10500 |
| Icelandic | 0367 | 0871 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1V10871 |
| Latin 1 EBCDIC Publishing Code Pages: | | | | | |
| Multinational, Belgium French, Belgium Dutch, Swiss French, Swiss German, Swiss Italian | 0169 | 0361 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000361 |
| German | 017E | 0382 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000382 |
| Belgian | 017F | 0383 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000383 |

Table 118. Code Pages for the Expanded Core Fonts (continued)

| Language Supported | CPGID HEX | CPGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Code Page Name |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|----------------|
| Latin 1 Country Extended Code Pages: | | | | | |
| Brazilian Portuguese | 0180 | 0384 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000384 |
| Canadian French | 0181 | 0385 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000385 |
| Danish, Norwegian | 0182 | 0386 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000386 |
| Finnish, Swedish | 0183 | 0387 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000387 |
| French, Catalan | 0184 | 0388 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000388 |
| Italian | 0185 | 0389 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000389 |
| Japanese | 0186 | 0390 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000390 |
| Portuguese | 0187 | 0391 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000391 |
| Castillian Spanish | 0188 | 0392 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000392 |
| Latin American Spanish | 0189 | 0393 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000393 |
| UK English | 018A | 0394 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000394 |
| US English, Canadian English | 018B | 0395 | 0479 | 1145 | T1000395 |
| Latin 1 ASCII Code Pages: | | | | | |
| Multinational, US English, UK English, Dutch, German, Finnish, French, Italian, Spanish, Swedish | 01B5 | 0437 | 0397 | 0919 | T1000437 |
| Multinational (Same as all Country extended Code Pages) | 0352 | 0850 | 0304 | 0980 | T1000850 |
| Portugese (Primary = 850) | 035C | 0860 | 03DE | 0990 | T1000860 |
| Icelandic (Primary = 850) | 035D | 0861 | 03DF | 0991 | T1000861 |
| Canadian French (Primary = 850) | 035F | 0863 | 03E1 | 0993 | T1000863 |
| Nordic (Primary = 850) | 0361 | 0865 | 03E3 | 0995 | T1000865 |
| IBM PC Desktop Publishing | 03EC | 1004 | 047A | 1146 | T1001004 |
| IOS Latin 1 | 0333 | 0819 | 02B9 | 0697 | T1000819 |
| Latin 2/3/4/5 EBCDIC and ASCII Code Pages: | | | | | |
| Croatian, Czech, East German, Hungarian, Polish, Romanian, Slovak, Slovenian | 0354 | 0852 | 0306 | 0982 | T1000852 |
| Latin2 Multilingual | 0366 | 0870 | 03BF | 0959 | T1000870 |
| Latin2 ISO/ ANSI 8 Bit | 0390 | 0912 | 03BF | 0959 | T1000912 |
| Latin3 Multilingual PC | 0355 | 0853 | 0307 | 0983 | T1000853 |
| Latin3 Multilingual | 0389 | 0905 | 0506 | 1286 | T1000905 |
| Latin4 ISO/ASCII | 042D | 1069 | 04E8 | 1256 | T1001069 |
| Latin4 EBCDIC | 0392 | 0914 | 04E8 | 1256 | T1000914 |
| Latin5 PC | 0359 | 0857 | 03DB | 0987 | T1000857 |
| Latin5 ISO/ANSI 8 Bit | 0398 | 0920 | 0480 | 1152 | T1000920 |
| Latin5 | 0402 | 1026 | 0480 | 1152 | T1001026 |
| Latin EBCDIC DCF Code Pages: | | | | | |
| DCF Release 2 Compatibility | 03EA | 1002 | 046C | 1132 | T1001002 |
| US Text Subset | 03eb | 1003 | 046D | 1133 | T1DCDCFS |

Table 118. Code Pages for the Expanded Core Fonts (continued)

| Language Supported | CPGID HEX | CPGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Code Page Name |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|----------------|
| Latin 1 Country Extended Code Pages: | | | | | |
| Text with Numeric Spacing | 042C | 1068 | 04EB | 1259 | T1001068 |
| GML List Symbols | 040F | 1039 | 04EA | 1258 | T1001039 |
| Cyrillic and Greek EBCDIC and ASCII Code Pages: | | | | | |
| Cyrillic Multilingual (Primary = 1025) | 0370 | 0880 | 03C0 | 0960 | T1000880 |
| Cyrillic ISO/ASCII 8 Bit | 0393 | 0915 | 047E | 1150 | |
| Cyrillic PC | 0357 | 0855 | 03D9 | 0985 | T1000855 |
| Cyrillic #2 PC | 0362 | 0866 | 03E4 | 0996 | T1000866 |
| Cyrillic Multilingual | 0401 | 1025 | 047E | 2250 | |
| Greek 183 (Primary = 875) | 01A7 | 0423 | 00DA | 0218 | |
| Greek ISO/ASCII 8 Bit | 032D | 0813 | 039D | 0925 | T1000813 |
| Greek PC (Primary = 869) | 0353 | 0851 | 0305 | 0981 | T1000851 |
| Greek PC | 0365 | 0869 | 03E6 | 0998 | T1000869 |
| Greek | 036B | 0875 | 039D | 0925 | T1000875 |
| GML List Symbols | 040F | 1039 | 04EA | 1258 | T1001039 |
| Arabic EBCDIC and ASCII Code Pages: | | | | | |
| Arabic Bilingual | 01A4 | 0420 | 00EB | 0235 | T1000420 |
| Arabic PC | 0360 | 0864 | 03E2 | 0994 | T1000864 |
| Arabic ISO/ASCII 8 Bit | 03F0 | 1008 | 048A | 1162 | T1001008 |
| Arabic Extended ISO/ASCII 8 Bit | 0405 | 1029 | 0482 | 1154 | T1001029 |
| Arabic Extended ISO/ASCII 8 Bit | 0416 | 1046 | 0499 | 1177 | T1001046 |
| GML List Symbols | 040F | 1039 | 04EA | 1258 | T1001039 |
| Hebrew EBCDIC and ASCII Code Pages: | | | | | |
| Hebrew ISO/ASCII 8 Bit | 0394 | 0916 | 03AD | 0941 | T1000916 |
| Hebrew Publishing | 0404 | 1028 | 04AF | 1199 | T1001028 |
| Hebrew | 01A8 | 0424 | 03AD | 0941 | T1000424 |
| Hebrew Character Set A (Primary = 424) | 0323 | 0803 | 047B | 1147 | T1000803 |
| Hebrew PC (Primary = 862) | 0358 | 0856 | 03DA | 0986 | T1000856 |
| Hebrew PC | 035E | 0862 | 03E0 | 0992 | T1000862 |
| GML List Symbols | 040F | 1039 | 04EA | 1258 | T1001039 |
| Symbols: | | | | | |
| Symbols, Set 7 | 0103 | 0259 | 0154 | 0340 | T1000259 |
| Symbols, Set 7 ASCII | 0383 | 0899 | 0154 | 0340 | T1000899 |
| Symbols, Adobe | 043F | 1087 | 04E9 | 1257 | T1001087 |
| Symbols, Adobe ASCII | 040E | 1038 | 04E9 | 1257 | T1001038 |
| Symbols, Modified Set 7 | 0443 | 1091 | 04A7 | 1191 | T1001091 |
| Symbols, Modified Set 7 ASCII | 0444 | 1092 | 04A7 | 1191 | T1001092 |
| Symbols, Set 8 | 016B | 0363 | 0276 | 0630 | T1000363 |

Table 118. Code Pages for the Expanded Core Fonts (continued)

| Language Supported | CPGID HEX | CPGID DEC | GCSGID HEX | GCSGID DEC | Code Page Name |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|------------|------------|-----------------------|
| Latin 1 Country Extended Code Pages: | | | | | |
| Math Symbols | 033D | 0829 | 038D | 0909 | T1M00829, T1000829 |

For more information about core fonts and the AFCCU printers, see the *Font Summary for AFP Font Collection*, S544–5633.

Appendix C. Related Publications

The following publications contain additional information about Printing Systems printers and printing software.

You can use any of the following methods to send comments about the publications:

- Reader's Comment Form in each publication
- Internet id:
- IBM Mail Exchange id: IEA USIB4TDB
- Fax number: 1-800-524-1519

Many of the following publications can be found on the Printing Systems home page at <http://www.ibm.com/printers>.

The titles and the order numbers for publications can change from time to time. To verify the current title or order number for a publication, contact your IBM representative.

Table 119. Advanced Function Presentation Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>IBM Page Printer Formatting Aid: User's Guide</i> | S544-5284 |
| <i>Printing and Publishing Collection Kit</i> | SK2T-2921 |
| <i>Guide to Advanced Function Presentation</i> | G544-3876 |
| <i>Advanced Function Presentation: Programming Guide and Line Data Reference</i> | S544-3884 |
| <i>Overlay Generation Language/370: User's Guide and Reference</i> | S544-3702 |

Table 120. Data Stream and Object Architectures

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Mixed Object Document Content Architecture Reference</i> | SC31-6802 |
| <i>Intelligent Printer Data Stream Reference</i> | S544-3417 |
| <i>Bar Code Object Content Architecture Reference</i> | S544-3766 |
| <i>Presentation Text Object Content Architecture Reference</i> | SC31-6803 |
| <i>Graphics Object Content Architecture Reference</i> | SC31-6804 |
| <i>Image Object Content Architecture Reference</i> | SC31-6805 |

Table 121. IBM AFP Fonts Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Technical Reference for IBM Expanded Core Fonts</i> | S544-5228 |
| <i>Font Summary for AFP Font Collection</i> | S544-5633 |
| <i>IBM AFP Fonts: Type Transformer User's Guide</i> | G544-3796 |
| <i>AFP Font Collection: Type Transformer for Windows User's Guide</i> | S544-5726 |
| <i>IBM AFP Fonts: Introduction to Typography</i> | G544-3122 |
| <i>IBM AFP Fonts: Licensed Program Specifications</i> | G544-5229 |
| <i>IBM AFP Fonts: Technical Reference for Code Page</i> | S544-3802 |

Table 122. IBM AFP DBCS Fonts Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Technical Reference for AFP Font Collection Japanese Fonts</i> | S544-5685 |
| <i>Technical Reference for AFP Font Collection Korean Fonts</i> | S544-5686 |
| <i>Technical Reference for AFP Font Collection Simplified Chinese Fonts</i> | S544-568 |
| <i>Technical Reference for AFP Font Collection Traditional Chinese Fonts</i> | S544-5688 |

Table 123. IBM Infoprint Manager for AIX Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>AFP Upload Configuration Guide Using SNA Server/6000</i> | S544-5422 |
| <i>Infoprint Manager: Reference Information</i> | S544-5475 |
| <i>Infoprint Manager for AIX: Administrator's Guide</i> | S544-5595 |
| <i>Infoprint Manager for AIX: User's and Operator's Guide</i> | S544-5596 |

Table 124. IBM Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000 Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000: Planning Guide</i> | G544-5716 |
| <i>Infoprint Manager: Reference</i> | S544-5475 |
| <i>Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000: Getting Started</i> | G544-5717 |

Table 125. IBM Infoprint Server for OS/390 V2R8- V2R10

| Publication | Order Number |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>OS/390 Infoprint Server V2R8 - V2R10 Messages and Diagnosis</i> | G544-5690 |
| <i>OS/390 Infoprint Server V2R8 - V2R10 User's Guide</i> | S544-5692 |
| <i>OS/390 Infoprint Server V2R8 - V2R10 Operation and Administration</i> | S544-5693 |
| <i>OS/390 Infoprint Server V2R8 - V2R10 Customization</i> | G544-5694 |
| <i>OS/390 Infoprint Server V2R8 - V2R10 Introduction</i> | G544-5696 |
| <i>OS/390 Infoprint Server V2R8 - V2R10 Migration</i> | G544-5697 |

Table 126. IBM Infoprint Server for OS/390 V2R8- V2R10

| Publication | Order Number |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>z/OS Infoprint Server Introduction</i> | S544-5742 |
| <i>z/OS Infoprint Server Migration</i> | G544-5743 |
| <i>z/OS Infoprint Server Customization</i> | S544-5744 |
| <i>z/OS Infoprint Server Operation and Administration</i> | S544-5745 |
| <i>z/OS Infoprint Server User's Guide</i> | G544-5746 |
| <i>z/OS Infoprint Server Messages and Diagnosis</i> | G544-5747 |

Table 127. Network Printer 12 Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Network Printer 12 Quick Setup Guide</i> | G544-5371 |
| <i>Network Printer 12 Users' Guide</i> | S544-5370 |
| <i>Ethernet and Token Ring Quick Configuration Guide</i> | G544-5499 |

Table 127. Network Printer 12 Publications (continued)

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Ethernet and Token Ring Configuration Guide</i> | G544–5240 |
| <i>IPDS Installation Instruction</i> | G544–5506 |
| <i>Twinax/Coax Configuration Guide</i> | G544–5241 |
| <i>PCL/PostScript Technical Reference</i> | S544–5344 |
| <i>IPDS and SCS Technical Referencee</i> | G544–5312 |

Table 128. Network Printer 17 Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Network Printer 17 Quick Setup Guide</i> | G544–5346 |
| <i>Network Printer 17 User's Guide</i> | S544–5343 |
| <i>Ethernet and Token Ring Quick Configuration Guide</i> | G544–5499 |
| <i>Ethernet and Token Ring Configuration Guide</i> | G544–5240 |
| <i>IPDS Installation Instruction</i> | G544–5506 |
| <i>Twinax/Coax Configuration Guide</i> | G544–5241 |
| <i>PCL/PostScript Technical Reference</i> | S544–5344 |
| <i>IPDS and SCS Technical Referencee</i> | G544–5312 |

Table 129. Infoprint Color 8 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Infoprint Color 8: Quick Start</i> | G544–5707 |
| <i>Infoprint Color 8: Handy Reference</i> | S544–5708 |
| <i>Infoprint Color 8: User's Guide</i> ¹ | ipc8ug0 |
| <i>Infoprint Color 8: Ethernet/Token Ring Installation and Configuration Guide</i> | S544–5709 |
| 1. This publication is only available as online information. It can be found in the <i>IBM Printing Systems Digital Library</i> at www.ibm.com/printers | |

Table 130. InfoPrint 12 Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Infoprint 12: User's Guide</i> | G544–5751 |
| <i>Infoprint 12: Network Printer Card User's Guide</i> | G544–5727 |
| <i>Infoprint 12: Online Reference</i> ¹ | IP12REF English R1 |
| 1. This publication is only available as online information. It can be found in the <i>IBM Printing Systems Digital Library</i> at www.ibm.com/printers | |

Table 131. Infoprint 20 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>InfoPrint 20 Quick Reference Card</i> | G544–5512 |
| <i>InfoPrint 20 User's Guide</i> | S544–5516 |
| <i>Ethernet and Token Ring Quick Configuration Guide</i> | G544–5499 |
| <i>Ethernet and Token Ring Configuration Guide</i> | G544–5240 |
| <i>PCL/PostScript Technical Reference</i> | S544–5344 |

Table 131. Infoprint 20 Printer Publications (continued)

| Publication | Order Number |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>IPDS and SCS Technical Reference</i> | G544-5312 |

Table 132. Infoprint 21 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>InfoPrint 21 Quick Reference Card</i> | G544-5700 |
| <i>InfoPrint 21 User's Guide</i> | G544-5701 |
| <i>Ethernet and Token Ring Quick Configuration Guide</i> | G544-5499 |
| <i>Ethernet and Token Ring Configuration Guide</i> | G544-5240 |
| <i>Twinax/Coax Configuration Guide</i> | G544-5241 |

Table 133. Infoprint 32 and Infoprint 40 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>InfoPrint 32 Infoprint 40 Quick Reference Card</i> | G544-5480 |
| <i>InfoPrint 32 Infoprint 40 User's Guide</i> | G544-5484 |
| <i>PCL/PostScript Technical Reference</i> | S544-5344 |
| <i>Ethernet and Token Ring Quick Configuration Guide</i> | G544-5499 |
| <i>Twinax/Coax Configuration Guide</i> | G544-5241 |
| <i>IPDS and SCS Technical Reference</i> | G544-5312 |

Table 134. Infoprint 60 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>InfoPrint 60 Introduction and Planning Guide</i> | G544-5242 |
| <i>InfoPrint 60 User's Guide</i> | S544-5432 |
| <i>InfoPrint 60 Finisher User and Planning Information</i> | S544-5604 |
| <i>InfoPrint 60 Finisher Application Design Guide</i> | S544-5643 |
| <i>Cut-Sheet Paper Reference for use with IBM Electrophotographic Printers</i> | G544-3915 |
| <i>InfoPrint 60 Attachment Configuration Handbook</i> | S544-3977 |
| <i>InfoPrint 60 Variable Size Paper and Tabs Guide</i> | S544-5522 |
| <i>InfoPrint 60 PCL Supplement</i> | S544-5649 |

Table 135. Infoprint 70 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>InfoPrint 70: Using Your Infoprint 70</i> | SA18-7727 |
| <i>InfoPrint 70: Quick Reference Card</i> | SC18-2495 |
| <i>InfoPrint 70: Introduction and Planning Guide</i> | GA18-7726 |

Table 136. Infoprint 2000-DP1 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Infoprint 2000 for IPDS Printing: User's Guide</i> | S544-5764 |
| <i>Infoprint 2000 Model DP1 for IPDS: Planning and Configuration Guide</i> | G544-5765 |
| <i>Infoprint 2000 Model DP1 for IPDS: Quick Reference Guide</i> | G544-5766 |

Table 137. Infoprint 62 Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Infoprint 62 Operator's Guide</i> | S544-5385 |
| <i>Infoprint 62 Introduction and Planning Guide</i> | G544-5384 |
| <i>Continuous Forms - Forms Design Reference</i> | G544-3921 |

Table 138. Infoprint 3000 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Infoprint 3000 Introduction and Planning Guide</i> | G544-5563 |
| <i>Infoprint 3000 Operator's Guide</i> | S544-5564 |
| <i>Continuous Forms - Forms Design Reference</i> | G544-3921 |
| <i>Infoprint 3000 Infoprint 4000 and 3900 Advanced Function Printers Safety Information</i> | G544-5565 |

Table 139. Infoprint 4000 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Infoprint 4000 Operator's Guide</i> | S544-5428 |
| <i>Infoprint 4000 and 3900 Advanced Function Printers Operator's Guide</i> | G544-5427 |
| <i>Continuous Forms - Forms Design Reference</i> | G544-3921 |
| <i>Introduction and Planning Guide</i> | G544-5427 |
| <i>Print On Demand Executive Summary and Planning Guide</i> | G544-3876 |
| <i>Print On Demand User's Guide</i> | G544-5325 |

Table 140. Infoprint Color 100 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Infoprint Color 100 Introduction and Planning Guide</i> | G544-5612 |
| <i>IBM Infoprint Color 100 Print Media Guide</i> | G544-5648 |
| <i>Infoprint Color 100 Operator's Guide</i> | S544-5611 |

Table 141. Infoprint Color 130 Plus Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Infoprint Color 130 Plus: Installation Planning Guide</i> | G544-5772 |
| <i>Infoprint Color 130 Plus: Quick Reference Guide</i> | G544-5781 |
| <i>Infoprint Color 130 Plus Operator's Guide</i> | G544-5771 |

Table 142. 4230 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>4230 Printer User's Guide Models 102 and 202</i> | SA40-0564 |
| <i>4230 Printer Models 101, 1S2, 201, 2S2, 4S3, and 5S3</i> | SA40-0593 |

Table 143. 4232 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>4232 Printer User's Guide Models 102 and 202</i> | SA24-4386 |

Table 144. 4247 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 4247 Models 001, 002 User's Guide | SA24-4408 |
| 4247 Model 003 User's Guide | S544-5780 |
| 4247 Model A00 User's Guide | SA24-4404 |
| 4247 Models 001, 002 with Coaxial Attachment Quick Reference Guide | SA24-4409 |
| 4247 Models 001, 002 with Twinaxial Attachment Quick Reference Guide | SA24-4411 |

Table 145. 4400 Printer Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 4400 Series Thermal Printers: Quick Start Guide | G544-5730 |
| 4400 Series Thermal Printers: User's Guide | G544-5731 |
| 10/100Base-T Ethernet™ Interface User's Manual | G544-5769 |
| 4400 Series Thermal Printers: ASCII Programmer's Reference Manual | G544-5733 |
| 4400 Series Thermal Printers: IGP Programmer's Reference Manual | G544-5734 |
| 4400 Series Thermal Printers: Code V™ Programmer's Reference Manual | G544-5735 |
| 4400 Series Thermal Printers: Coax/Twinax Programmer's Reference Manual | G544-5736 |
| 4400 Series Thermal Printers: IPDS Programmer's Reference Manual | G544-5737 |

Table 146. 6400 Line Matrix Printer

| Publication | Order Number |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 6400 Line Matrix Printers Setup Guide Cabinet and Pedestal Models | S544-5640 |
| 6400 Line Matrix Printers Operator's Guide Cabinet and Pedestal Models | S544-5641 |
| 6400 Line Matrix Printers Ethernet Interface User's Manual | GC31-3878 |

Table 147. Print Services Facility for OS/390 Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Print Services Facility for OS/390 User's Guide | S544-5430 |
| Print Services Facility for OS/390: Customizaion | S544-5622 |

Table 148. Print Services Facility/VM Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Print Services Facility/VM: Application Programming Guide | S544-3677 |
| Print Services Facility/VM: System Programming Guide | S544-3680 |

Table 149. Print Services Facility/VSE Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Print Services Facility/VSE: Application Programming Guide | S544-3666 |
| Print Services Facility/VSR: System Programming Guide | S544-3665 |

Table 150. Print Services Facility for AS/400 Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>AS/400 Printer Device Programming</i> | SC41-3713 |
| <i>AS/400 Data Description Specifications</i> | SC41-9620 |

Table 151. Other AFP Products Publications

| Publication | Order Number |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Composed Document Print Facility: Data Stream Interface, Typographic Fonts Interface</i> | SC33-6134 |
| <i>Document Composition Facility and Document Library Facility: General Information</i> | GH20-9158 |
| <i>Overlay Generation Language/370: User's Guide and Reference</i> | S544-3702 |
| <i>Page Printer Formatting Aid/370: User's Guide and Reference</i> | S544-3700 |
| <i>Using Image Handling Facility</i> | SH12-5280 |

Glossary

Glossary

Source Identifiers

This publication includes terms and definitions from the *IBM Dictionary of Computing*, SC20-1699.

Definitions reprinted from the *American National Dictionary for Information Processing Systems* are identified by the symbol (A) following the definition.

Definitions reprinted from a published section of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) *Vocabulary-Information Processing* or from a published section of *Vocabulary-Office Machines* developed by Subcommittee 1, Joint Technical Committee 1, of the International Organization for Standardization and the International Electrotechnical Committee (ISO/IEC JTC1/SC1) are identified by the symbol (I) following the definition. Because many ISO definitions are also reproduced in the *American National Dictionary for Information Processing Systems*, ISO definitions may also be identified by the symbol (A).

Definitions reprinted from working documents, draft proposals, or draft international standards of ISO Technical Committee 97, Subcommittee 1 (Vocabulary), Joint Technical Committee 1 are identified by the symbol (T) following the definition, indicating that final agreement has not yet been reached among its participating members.

Definitions that are specific to IBM products are so labeled; for example, "In SNA", or "In the 3820".

References

The following cross-references are used in this glossary:

Contrast with. This refers to a term that has an opposite or substantively different meaning.

See. This refers the reader to multiple-word terms in which this term appears.

See also. This refers the reader to terms that have a related, but not synonymous, meanings.

Synonym for. This appears in the commentary of a less desirable or less specific term and identifies the preferred term that has the same meaning.

Synonymous with. This appears in the commentary of a preferred term and identifies less desirable or less specific terms that have the same meaning.

A

ABIC. See *Adaptive Bilevel Image Compression*

accumulator. (1) A register in which the result of an operation is formed. (I) (A) (2) A 3800 hardware feature that provides a separate storage area to hold data in raster form. It can be used either for composing a sheet of data that combines a large amount of variable and constant data or for storing an electronic overlay in raster form so that the overlay is merged with variable data as the page is printed.

Adaptive Bilevel Image Compression (ABIC). A 4-bit image capable of displaying up to 16 shades of gray.

Advanced Function Common Control Unit (AFCCU). Used to describe all printers that have controllers based on RS/6000 and Power PC technology.

Advanced Function Image and Graphics feature. A hardware feature that can be purchased and installed on an AFP printer to support printer microcode image decompression of IOCA data streams that were compressed using standard compression routines. AFIG also corrects the resolution of an input image to match the printer's resolution, thereby providing resolution independence for scanned input.

Advanced Function Presentation (AFP). A set of licensed programs, together with user applications, that use the all-points-addressable concept to print on presentation devices. AFP includes creating, formatting, archiving, retrieving, viewing, distributing, and printing information. See *presentation device*.

AFCCU. Advanced Function Common Control Unit

AFIG. See *Advanced Function Image and Graphics feature*.

AFP. See *Advanced Function Presentation*.

AFP data stream. A presentation data stream that is processed in AFP environments. MO:DCA-P is the strategic AFP interchange data stream, and IPDS is the strategic AFP printer data stream.

AFPDS. A term formerly used to identify the composed-page MO:DCA-based data stream interchanged in AFP environments. See also *MO:DCA* and *AFP data stream*.

all points addressable (APA). The ability to address, reference, and position text, overlays, and images at any defined position or pel on the printable area of the paper. This capability depends on the ability of the hardware to address and to display each picture element.

alternate medium source. The ability to select print medium from more than one source (bin).

APA. All points addressable.

APAR. See *Authorized program analysis report*.

application program. (1) A program that performs a particular data processing task, such as inventory control or payroll. (2) A program that produces the print data set.

authorized program analysis report (APAR). A report of a problem caused by a suspected defect in a current unaltered release of a program.

A4 paper. Paper size that is 210 by 297 mm (8.27 by 11.7 inch).

A5 paper. Paper size that is 148 by 210 mm (5.83 by 8.27 inch).

B

Bar Code Object Content Architecture (BCOCA). An architected collection of constructs used to interchange and present bar code data.

bar code symbology. A bar code language. Bar code symbologies are defined and controlled by various industry groups and standards organizations. Bar code symbologies are described in the public domain bar code specifications. Synonymous with *symbology*.

baseline. The imaginary line on which successive characters are aligned in the inline direction.

BCOCA. See *Bar Code Object Content Architecture*.

bin. A paper source on cut-sheet printers. See also *cassette*.

bounded-box font. A font designed to use bounded character boxes. Contrast with *unbounded-box font*.

BTS. Burster-trimmer-stacker.

burst. To separate continuous-forms paper into single sheets.

burster-trimmer-stacker (BTS). A printer hardware feature that separates continuous forms into single sheets, trims the carrier strip from both edges of the forms, and stacks the sheets.

C

cassette. In a cut-sheet printer, a movable paper storage enclosure. See also *bin*.

CCITT. See International Telegraph and Telephone Consultative Committee.

changeable media origin. The ability of the printer to accept a command that changes the point on the medium where printing begins.

channel-attached. In PSF, a device that is linked to the host system using only S/390 channel protocols. For example, a 3800 printer cabled to the host system with a S/390 channel adapter is considered a channel-attached printer. Contrast with *SNA-attached*.

character. (1) A member of a set of elements used for the representation, organization, or control of data. Characters may be letters, digits, punctuation marks, or other symbols represented in the form of a spatial arrangement of adjacent or connected strokes or in the form of other physical conditions in data media. (2) A letter, numeral, punctuation mark, or special graphic used for the production of text. (3) In bar codes, a single group of bars and spaces that represent an individual number, letter, punctuation mark, or other symbol. (4) A byte of data. (5) See also *graphic character*.

character graphic. See also *graphic character*.

character graphic. A visual representation of a character, other than a control character, that is normally produced by writing, printing, or displaying. (T)

character identifier. The standard identifier for a character regardless of its style. For example, all uppercase As have the same character identifier.

character rotation. The alignment of a character with respect to its character baseline, measured in degrees in a clockwise direction. Examples are 0°, 90°, 180°, and 270°. Zero-degree character rotation exists when a character is in its customary alignment with the baseline.

character set. (1) A finite set of different graphic or control characters upon which agreement has been reached and that is considered complete for some purpose; for example, each of the characters in ISO Standard 646 *7-bit Coded Character Sets for Information Processing Interchange*. (2) For page printers, the font library member that contains the character graphics and their descriptions.

code page. A set of assignments, each of which assigns a code point to a character. Each code page has a unique name or identifier. Within a given code page, a code point is assigned to one character. More

than one character set can be assigned code points from the same code page. See also *coded font*.

code page global identifier (CPGID). (1) A 5-digit registered identifier used to specify a particular assignment of code points to graphic characters. (2) See also *graphic character set global identifier*.

code point. A 1-byte code representing one of 256 potential characters.

coded font. (1) A font library member that associates a code page and a font character set. For double-byte fonts, a coded font associates more than one pair of code pages and font character sets. (2) A font that can be fully described using a code page, character set, type style, posture, weight classification, and width classification. For actual presentation, a size must be specified. Some coded fonts require all of these attributes. Others, called symbol sets, require only code page and character set. See also *code page* and *character set*.

coded overlay. An overlay that is stored in the printer in a coded (not raster) format. Contrast with *raster pattern overlay*.

color selection. The ability to specify a color other than black to achieve more than one color of printed data. For example, the 4224-2C2 supports selection of several colors, depending on the color of ribbon installed in the printer. Other printers support the selection of black or the *color of the medium*, which can cause white lettering on a background that has been shaded black, for example.

command. A request from a terminal or a specification in a batch-processing print file for the operation of a particular program.

common-use forms. A set of paper sizes selected as being the most common in use throughout the world.

communication attached. In PSF, a device that is SNA-attached and that uses a communication controller. For example, a 3812 printer attached to a 3174 control unit that is attached to a 3175 Communication Controller can be considered to be a communication-attached printer. Contrast with *local attached*.

compatibility mode. A mode of operation for printing the output of 3800 Model 1 application programs on a 3800 page printer with little or no change to the application or JCL. Contrast with *page mode*.

composed text. Text data and text-control information that dictates the format, placement, and appearance of data to be printed.

composed-text data. Obsolete term for text data that has been composed into pages. Text formatting

programs such as DCF can create text data consisting entirely of structured fields. Synonym for *MO:DCA-P data*.

compressed pattern storage (CPS). Storage that holds the extended (double-byte) fonts for the 3800 Model 6 or Model 8 printers.

compression algorithm. An algorithm used to compress image data. Compression of image data can decrease the volume of data required to represent an image.

concatenated data set. In MVS, a group of logically connected data sets that are treated as one data set for the duration of a job step. See also *data set*, *partitioned data set*, and *library*.

conditional processing. A page-definition function that allows input data records to partially control their own formatting.

continuous forms. A series of connected forms that feed continuously through a printing device. The connection between the forms is perforated to allow the user to tear them apart. Before printing, the forms are folded in a stack arrangement with the folds along the perforations. Contrast with *cut-sheet paper*.

continuous-forms stacker. An output assembly on a continuous-forms printer that refolds and stacks the continuous forms after printing.

copy group. (1) One or more copies of a sheet of paper. Each copy can have modifications, such as text suppression, page position, forms flash, overlays, paper-source, and duplex printing. (2) In Print Services Facility, an internal object in a form definition that identifies the overlays and defines page placement and modifications to the form. (3) Synonymous with medium map.

copy modification. In the 3800 Printing Subsystem Model 1, a feature that allows the printing of predefined data on all pages of specified copies of a print file.

Core Interchange font. Synonym for *IBM Core Interchange font*.

CPGID. See *code page global identifier*.

CPS. Compressed pattern storage.

CSE. Cut-sheet emulation

current print position. The picture element that defines the character reference point or the upper-left corner of an image.

cut-sheet emulation (CSE). The ability of a continuous-forms printer to provide output that is similar to output from a cut-sheet printer. Some continuous-forms printers provide an operator option to enable cut-sheet emulation mode.

cut-sheet paper. The medium that is cut into uniform-size sheets before being loaded into the printer. Contrast with *continuous forms*.

D

DASD. Direct access storage device.

data check. A synchronous indication of a condition caused by invalid data or incorrect positioning of data. Reporting of some data checks can be suppressed.

data control block (DCB). A control block used by access method routines in storing and retrieving data.

data map. An internal object in a page definition that specifies fonts, page segments, fixed text, page size, and the placement and orientation of text. Synonymous with page format.

data set. A named set of records stored and processed as a unit. See also *file.*, *concatenated data set*, *partitioned data set*, and *sequential data set*.

data types. The type of data objects that can be printed by the printer. Each type of data object has its own architecture. An overview of the architectures is presented in the *Mixed Object Document Content Architecture Reference*.

Two types of text data are: PTOCA PT1 and PTOCA PT2. PT1 provides the basic function needed to control text data. PT2 provides additional migration controls for underscoring, overstriking, and making a temporary baseline move.

Two types of image data are: IOCA FS10 image and IM image. IOCA image provides more function than IM Image; for example, compression and resolution independence is possible with IOCA image.

Some printers support vector graphics called GOCA DR/2V0.

Some printers also have the capability of printing BCOCA BCD1 bar code data without requiring special fonts or special processing in the host system.

DCB. Data control block.

DCF. .See *Document Composition Facility*.

Decompression Performance Enhancement feature.

A feature you can purchase and install on your AFP printer to provide printer hardware image decompression of IOCA data streams that were compressed using standard compression routines. The DPE capability improves the decompression performance offered with the AFIG feature.

default. An alternate value, attribute, or option that is assumed when none has been specified, and one is needed to continue processing.

deferred printing mode. A printing mode that spools output through JES to a data set instead of printing it immediately. Output is controlled using JCL statements. Contrast with direct printing mode.

Device resolution. Printers can also be categorized by the resolution they support. For example, .br 240-pel resolution is supported by such printers as: 3800, 3820, 381x, 3160, 3930, the AFCCU-based 3900 family of printers, and the group 3 printers. 240- or 300-pel (configurable) is supported by the 3130 printer. 300-pel resolution is supported by such printers as: 391X, 3935, 4028, the PPDS and the PCL printers (such as the 4019 and 4029). 600-pel resolution is supported by the InfoPrint 4000 DR1/DR2 printer, as well as the Network Printers 12, 17, and 24.

direct access storage device (DASD). A computer storage device in which access time is effectively independent of the location of the data.

direct printing. A PSF for OS/390 printing mode that allows PSF exclusive use of the printer. Output is printed directly and is not controlled by the Job Entry Subsystem (JES).

disabled mechanisms. The ability to identify one mechanism of the printer as disabled. An example is the ability to print from one medium source when the other source is disabled.

Distributed Print Function (DPF). A component of PSF for OS/2 that you can use to print jobs sent to PSF for OS/2 from PSF for OS/390, PSF/VM, PSF/VSE, or PSF for AS/400. DPF receives host PSF output and resources for spooling and printing with PSF for OS/2. DPF also stores PSF for OS/390 and PSF/VSE resources in the DPF resource library, so that the host system does not have to send PSF resources each time documents are spooled. Through DPF, PSF for OS/2 2.0 provides a function similar to that provided by Remote PrintManager (RPM) Version 3.0 under DOS.

document. (1) A machine-readable collection of one or more objects that represent a composition, a work, or a collection of data. (2) A publication or other written material.

Document Composition Facility (DCF). An IBM licensed program that provides a text formatter called SCRIPT/VS. SCRIPT/VS can process files marked up with a unique set of controls and tags.

double-byte coded font. A font in which the characters are defined by 2 bytes; the first defining a coded font section, and the second defining a code point. Double-byte coded fonts are required to support languages requiring more than 256 graphic characters. Two bytes are required to identify each graphic character. Kanji is printed using a double-byte font. Contrast with *single-byte coded font*.

download. To transfer data from one computer for use on another one. Typically, users download to a printer, from a larger computer to a diskette or fixed disk on a smaller computer, or from a system unit to an adapter.

downloaded fully described fonts. The IPDS form of host fonts downloaded to a printer. PSF converts pairs of host font character sets and code pages into IPDS form before downloading to the printer for printing.

DPE. See *Decompression Performance Enhancement feature*.

DPF. See Distributed Print Function.

drain. An operator action to halt the flow of jobs to a printer, usually to stop the printer or to change print options.

duplex printing. Printing on both sides of a sheet of paper. Contrast with *simplex printing*. See also *normal duplex printing* and *tumble duplex printing*.

E

EBCDIC. Extended binary-coded decimal interchange code.

electronic overlay. A collection of constant data, such as lines, shading, text, boxes, or logos, that is electronically composed in the host processor and stored in a library, and that can be merged with variable data during printing. Contrast with *page segment*. See also *page overlay* and *medium overlay*.

Enterprise System Connection. See *ESCON channel*.

ESA. Enterprise System Architecture.

ESCON channel. A channel having an Enterprise Systems Connection channel-to-control unit I/O interface that uses serial-by-bit optical cable as a transmission medium.

exception. A condition that exists when the printer:

- Detects an invalid or unsupported command, order, control, or parameter value from the host.
- Finds a condition requiring host-system notification.
- Detects a condition that requires the host system to resend data.

exception highlighting. The markings placed on the printed page to indicate the source of a data stream error. Two types of highlight markings are used:

- *Print-error marker.* a solid rectangle.
- *Print-error vector.* a line drawn from a printed error code to the point on the page where the error occurred.

extended binary-coded decimal interchange code (EBCDIC). A coded character set of 256 eight-bit characters.

F

FCB. See *forms control buffer*.

FGID. See *font global identifier*.

file.

- In PSF for OS/2, a collection of related data.
- In PSF for OS/390, a member of a partitioned data set or a sequential data set.
- In PSF/VM, a CMS file.
- In PSF/VSE, a member in a library.sublibrary.

fixed metrics. Measurement information in specific units such as pels, inches, or centimeters for individual or collections of graphic characters. See also *font metrics*.

fold memory. The ability of a form to refold at the fold perforation after exposure to heat during the fusing process.

font. (1) A family or assortment of characters of a given size and style; for example, 9 point Bodoni Modern. (A). (2) One size and one typeface in a particular type family, including letters, numerals, punctuation marks, special characters, and ligatures. (3) A paired character set and code page that can be used together for printing a string of text characters. A double-byte font can consist of multiple pairs of character sets and code pages. (4) See *coded font*, *double-byte coded font*, and *symbol set*.

font character set. Synonym for character set.

font global identifier. (1) A number that identifies the character style and size for certain printers. (2) A unique value that identifies the type family, typeface, and, sometimes, the point size of a character set.

font metrics. Measurement information that defines individual character values, such as height, width, and space, as well as overall font values, such as averages and maximums. Font metrics may be expressed in specified fixed units, such as pels, or in relative units that are independent of both the resolution and size of the font.

font pruning. An action in which PSF reduces the number of characters downloaded to the printer by sending only those characters in a character set that are actually referenced by the code page. Font pruning can save time needed to download the characters and can reduce the amount of raster pattern storage used by the printer but can increase processor use.

font width. (1) A characteristic value, parallel to the character baseline, that represents the size of all graphic characters in a font. (2) In a font character set, nominal font width is a font-designer defined value corresponding to the nominal character increment for a font character set. The value is generally the width of

the space character and is defined differently for fonts with different spacing characteristics.

- For fixed-pitch, uniform character increment fonts: the fixed character increment, which is also the space character increment.
- For PSM fonts: the width of the space character.
- For typographic, proportionally-spaced fonts: 1/3 of the vertical font size, which is also the default size of the space character

The font designer can also define a minimum and a maximum horizontal font size to represent the limits of scaling. (3) In font referencing, the specified font width is the desired size of the font when the characters are presented. If this size is different from the nominal horizontal font size specified in a font character set, the character shapes and character metrics might need to be scaled prior to presentation.

form. A division of the physical medium; multiple forms can exist on a physical medium. For example, a roll of paper might be divided by a printer into rectangular pieces of paper, each representing a form. Envelopes are an example of a physical medium that comprises only one form. The IPDS architecture defines four types of forms: cut-sheets, continuous forms, envelopes, and computer output on microfilm. Each type of form has a top edge. A form has two sides, a front side and a back side. Synonymous with sheet.

form definition. A resource used by PSF that defines the characteristics of the form that includes overlays to be used (if any), paper source (for cut-sheet printers), duplex printing, text suppression, the position of composed-text data on the form, and the number and modifications of a page.

format. (1) The shape, size, and general makeup of a printed document. (2) To prepare a document for printing. (3) The arrangement of text on the page.

forms control buffer (FCB). A buffer for controlling the vertical format of printed output. The forms control buffer is a line-printer control that is similar to the punched-paper, carriage-control tape used on IBM 1403 printers. On AFP page printers, the forms control buffer is replaced by the page definition. See *page definition*.

forms flash. In the 3800, a printer function that prints photographic images with variable text data that is composed into pages. The printer operator must insert a frame containing a photographic negative into the printer to use the forms-flash function.

fully described font. In the IPDS architecture, an LF1-type raster font containing font metrics, descriptive information, and the raster representation of character shapes, for a specific graphic character set. A fully described font can be downloaded to the printer using the Load Font Control and Load Font commands. Synonym for *raster font*. See *downloaded fully described fonts* and *resident fully described fonts*.

G

GCSGID. See *graphic character set global identifier*.

GDDM. See *Graphical Data Display Manager*.

global resource identifier (GRID). An 8-byte identifier used to identify an external name of a font, or, in AS/400, to identify fonts used in text. A GRID, which identifies a character-set and code-page combination, consists of the GCSGID, CPGID, FGID, and font width.

GOCA. See *Graphics Object Content Architecture*.

graphic character. A visual representation of a character, other than a control character, that is normally produced by writing, printing, or displaying. (T)

graphic character set global identifier (GCSGID). (1) A unique value that identifies the list of graphic character identifiers included in a component. (2) See *also code page global identifier*.

Graphical Data Display Manager. A series of IBM programs that can create, among other functions, device-independent visual data such as page segments and send it to devices such as displays, plotters, printers, and personal computers.

Graphics Object Content Architecture (GOCA). An architected collection of constructs used to interchange and present graphics data.

gray-scale image. The ability to print an image in shades of gray as well as in black.

GRID. See *global resource identifier*.

guaranteed print labeling. A method of print labeling that ensures the integrity of the identification label by preventing the user from writing over the label. If attempts are made to override print labeling, processing of the print file is terminated, and an audit record is written.

group 3. A term used in VM-specific environments to define channel-attached high-end printers such as the 3825, 3827, 3828, 3829, 3835-1, 3835-2, and 3900-1. Group 3 printers are also referred to as CCU (Common Control Unit) printers, because the hardware control unit was based on a common design. Because this publication encompasses more than VM-specific information, the term `:q.group 3:eq.` is not used in this publication, except for definition purposes in the Glossary section.

group 4. A term used in VM-specific environments to define SNA-attached that use coax or twinax, and include such printers as the 3130, 381x, 3930, 3935, 391x, and 4028. The group 4 printers can be communications-attached with 37xx or 3x7x controllers, or through an SNA token ring LAN. Because this publication encompasses more than VM-specific

information, the term "group 4" is not used in this publication, except for definition purposes in the Glossary section.

H

hard page segment. (1) A page segment that is declared in the Map Page Segment structured field and loaded in the printer as a resource that can be reused during the job without being reloaded to the printer. (2) Within another element, as an inline resource. (3) Contrast with *soft page segment*.

hardcopy. (1) A copy of a display image generated on an output device such as a printer or plotter, and which can be carried away. (T) (2) A printed copy of machine output in a visually readable form; for example, printed reports, listings, documents, and summaries.

hardware default font. The font used by the printer if no other font is specified.

hexadecimal. Pertaining to a numbering system with base of 16; valid numbers use the digits 0 through 9 and characters A through F, where A represents 10 and F represents 15.

host system. (1) A data processing system that prepares programs and the operating environments for another computer or controller. (2) The data processing system to which a network is connected and with which the system can communicate.

HP-PCL. Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language, the data stream used by a type of Hewlett-Packard printer, some of which are supported by PSF for OS/2 and PSF for AIX.

I

IBM Compatibility fonts. A group of fonts supplied as part of Print Services Facility, Print Management Facility, and Application System/400. Many of these fonts are derived from fonts created for specific IBM printers (such as the IBM 3800 Model 1, the IBM 6670 Information Distributor, and the IBM Proprinter) or applications (such as Document Composition Facility). The fonts are called compatibility fonts because they allow applications created for the 3800 Model 1 and 6670 to be migrated to newer page printers without having to change the fonts specified in the applications. Examples of IBM compatibility fonts include APL, Boldface, Document, Essay, Format, Gothic, Letter Gothic, Orator, Prestige, Roman, Script, Serif, and Text type families as well as a set of Proprinter Emulation fonts.

IBM Core Interchange fonts. A group of fonts supplied as part of Print Services Facility that are common across all SAA and AIX operating systems and whose objective is to facilitate document interchange

across these systems with full fidelity. These fonts are also compatible with fonts provided by Microsoft on their DOS/Windows workstations and with the base fonts provided by Adobe on their PostScript printers, providing document portability across both IBM and non-IBM computer systems. The fonts are provided in the Courier, Times New Roman, and Helvetica type families in both roman medium and bold weights and in italic medium and bold weights.

IBM MMR. See *IBM Modified Modified Read*.

IBM Modified Modified Read (MMR). A compression algorithm.

IM image command set. In the IPDS architecture, a collection of commands used to present IM image data in a page, page segment, or overlay.

image. Toned and untoned pels arranged in a pattern.

image data. Rectangular arrays of raster information that define an image.

Image Object Content Architecture. An architected collection of constructs used to interchange and present images.

IMM. See *IBM Modified Modified Read*.

impact printer. A printer in which printing results from mechanical impacts. (I) (A) Contrast with *nonimpact printer*.

impression. The data printed on one side of a sheet. Printer speed is often measured in terms of impressions per minute (ipm).

inline. Synonymous with *inline direction*.

inline direction. The direction of successive characters in a line of text. Synonym for *inline*.

Intelligent Printer Data Stream (IPDS). An architected host-to-printer data stream that contains both data and controls defining how the data is to be presented.

interface. A shared boundary. An interface may be a hardware component to link two devices or a portion of storage or registers accessed by two or more computer programs. (A)

International Telecommunications Union-Telecommunications Standardization Sector (ITU-TSS). See *International Telegraph and Telephone Consultative Committee (CCITT)*.

International Telegraph and Telephone Consultative Committee. An organization (one of four permanent organs of the International Telecommunication Union [ITU], headquartered in Geneva, Switzerland) that is concerned with the problems relating to international telephony and telegraphy. The CCITT Plenary Assembly

meets at regular intervals to prepare a list of technical questions related to telephone and telegraph services. The Assembly assigns these questions to study groups, which then prepare recommendations to be presented at the next plenary meeting. Approved recommendations are published for the use of engineers, scientists, and manufacturers around the world.

The committee's name has been changed to International Telecommunications Union-Telecommunications Standardization Sector (ITU-TSS).

IOCA. See *Image Object Content Architecture*.

IPDS. See *Intelligent Printer Data Stream*.

J

JCL. Job control language. See *job control language*.

JES. Job entry subsystem. See *job entry system*.

job control language (JCL). A control language used to identify a job to an operating system and to describe the requirements of the job.

job entry subsystem (JES). A system facility for spooling, job queuing, and managing I/O.

K

kanji. Nonphonetic Chinese characters used in Japanese written language. In a font representing kanji characters, each character is represented by a double-byte font.

L

LAN. Local Area Network

landscape page presentation. The position of a printed sheet that has its long edges as the top and bottom and its short edges as the sides. Contrast with *portrait page presentation*.

library.

- In PSF for OS/2, a directory, a list of files stored on a disk or diskette.
- In PSF for OS/390, a partitioned data set or a series of concatenated data sets.
- In PSF/VM, a collection of CMS files, generally with the same file type.
- In PSF/VSE, a library sublibrary.

line data. Data prepared for printing on a line printer, such as a 3800 Model 1. Line data is usually characterized by carriage-control characters and table reference characters. Contrast with *MO:DCA-P* data.

line merging. Printing two or more records of line data at the same location on the page. Line merging is used

with line data to mix different fonts on the same line, to underscore or overstrike, and on impact printers to create darker print.

line printer. A device that prints a line of characters as a unit. (I) (A) Contrast with *page printer*.

lines per inch (lpi). (1) .The number of lines that can be printed vertically within an inch. (2) A unit of measurement for the specification of the placement of the baseline.

local attached. In PSF, an SNA-attached device that does not have a communications controller in its configuration. For example, a 3812 printer connected to a channel-attached 3174 control unit defined to the host system through VTAM is considered to be a local-attached printer. Contrast with *communication attached*.

logical page. A presentation space. One or more object areas or data blocks may be mapped to a logical page. A logical page has specifiable characteristics, such as size, shape, orientation, and offset. The shape of a logical page is the shape of a rectangle. Orientation and offset are specified relative to a medium coordinate system. See also *page*.

logical page origin. (1) The point on the logical page from which positions of images, graphics, page overlays, and text with 0-degree inline direction are measured. (2) The point on the logical page represented by $X_p=0$, $Y_p=0$ in the X_p coordinate system.

lpi. Lines per inch.

LU type 1. An SNA logical unit type that provides a communication protocol among host application programs and terminals. Some printers also use this protocol to communicate with host application programs.

LU type 6.2. An SNA logical unit type that converges functions from existing LU types to provide a single, interchangeable communication protocol.

M

macro. Synonym for *macroinstruction*.

macroinstruction. An instruction that causes the execution of a predefined sequence of instructions.

magnetic ink character recognition (MICR). Character recognition of characters printed with ink that contains particles of a magnetic material. (I) (A)

magnetic toner. Toner used with specific printers to print magnetic ink character recognition (MICR) fonts.

manual forms feed. The ability to manually feed a medium into a printing device rather than having the device automatically feed the medium.

Map Page Segment structured field (MPS). The Map Page Segment structured field identifies the page segments to be loaded into the printer and to remain in the printer while the entire print file is printed.

marking. A method that refers to the updating of certain structured fields that identifies a resource for use by Remote PrintManager or as being printer resident.

maximum speed. The highest speed of which the printer is capable in characters per second (cps), lines per minute (lpm), or impressions per minute (ipm), for a given size sheet.

media destination. The destination to which sheets are sent as the last step in the print process. Some printers support several media destinations to allow options such as print job distribution to one or more specific destinations, collated copies without having to send the document to the printer multiple times, and routing output to a specific destination for security reasons. Contrast with *media source*.

media destination by copy. The ability to select the destination for an individual copy of a sheet. This function is not supported by PSF.

media origin. The first hardware addressable point on the physical medium. The point from which the logical page origin is positioned by the medium map. This point is represented by $X_m=0$, $Y_m=0$ in the X_m , Y_m coordinate system. The media origin is defined relative to the top edge of the medium. Synonymous with *medium origin*.

media source. The source from which sheets are obtained for printing. Some printers support several media sources, so that media with different characteristics (such as size, color, and type) can be selected. Contrast with media destination.

media source by copy. The ability to select the source of the media for each copy of a sheet, when making multiple copies of a sheet.

medium. The physical material (for example, paper) on which data is printed. See also *form*.

medium map. An internal object in a form definition that controls the modifications to a form, page placement, and overlays. Synonymous with *copy group*.

medium origin. Synonym for *media origin*.

medium overlay. An electronic overlay that is invoked by the medium map of a form definition for printing at a fixed position on the form. See *page overlay*.

MICR. See *magnetic ink character recognition*.

MICR printing. The ability of a printer to either print with magnetic toner or to allow MICR printing through a postprocessing device.

microfilm device. An output device that presents a hardcopy on microfilm.

Mixed Object Document Content Architecture. An architected, device-independent data stream for interchanging documents.

mixed-pitch font. A font that simulates a typographic font. The characters are in a limited set of pitches; for example, 10 pitch, 12 pitch, and 15 pitch.

MO:DCA. See *Mixed Object Document Content Architecture*.

MO:DCA-P. Print data that has been composed into pages. Text formatting programs such as DCF can produce composed text data consisting entirely of structured fields.

MOF. Metric-only font.

monospaced font. A font in which the graphics characters have a uniform character increment. Synonymous with *uniformly spaced font*. Contrast with *proportionally spaced font*.

MPS. See Map Page Segment structured field.

Multiple Virtual Storage (MVS). An IBM operating system running on a S/370 or S/390 processor.

multiple-up. The printing of more than one page of application data on a single surface of a sheet of paper.

MVS. See *Multiple Virtual Storage*.

N

N_UP printing. In basic N_UP printing, the dividing of a side of a sheet into a fixed number of equal-size partitions. For example, N_UP 4 divides each side of the sheet into four equal partitions. In enhanced N_UP printing, the sheet can be divided into 8 partitions, anywhere on the sheet.

NACK. See *negative acknowledgment reply*.

narrow forms. Forms that have their longer edges at the sides and their shorter edges at the top and bottom.

negative acknowledge reply (NACK). A reply from a printer to a host indicating that an exception has occurred.

nonimpact printer. A printer in which printing is not the result of mechanical impacts; for example, thermal printers, electrostatic printers, and photographic printers. (I) (A) Contrast with *impact printer*.

normal duplex printing. Printing on both sides of the paper so that the sheets can be bound on the long edge of the paper. Contrast with *simplex printing*. See also *tumble duplex printing*.

O

object. A resource or a sequence of structured fields contained within a larger entity, such as a page segment or a page.

offset stacking. A function that allows the printed output pages to be offset for easy separation of print jobs.

OGL/370. See *Overlay Generation Language/370*.

operator-adjustable forms. On certain printers, the ability of the operator to adjust the page image on the medium to align data for correct placement on preprinted forms.

option. (1) A specification in a statement that may be used to influence the execution of the statement. (2) A choice offered from a list of possibilities.

orientation. The number of degrees an object is rotated relative to a reference; for example, the orientation of an overlay relative to the logical page origin. Orientation usually applies to blocks of information, whereas character rotation applies to individual characters. See also *text orientation*.

origin. A picture element (pel) position from which the placement and orientation of text, images, and page segments are specified. For example, pages, overlays, and page segments have origins.

outline font. A font technology in which the graphic character shapes are represented in digital form by a series of mathematical expressions that define the outer edges of the strokes. The resulting graphic character shapes can be either solid or hollow. Outline fonts can be scaled (sized) to any size. The IBM outline font character sets have a CZ prefix. Contrast with *raster font*.

overlay. A collection of constant data, such as lines, shading, text, boxes, or logos, that is electronically composed in the host processor and stored in a library and that can be merged with variable data during printing. See also *forms flash.*, *page overlay*, *medium overlay*, and *electronic overlay*.

Overlay Generation Language/370 (OGL/370). An IBM licensed program you can use to design objects for electronic overlays, such as lines, boxes, shadings, and irregular shapes, to create graphics.

P

page. (1) A data stream object delimited by a Begin Page structured field and an End Page structured field. A page can contain text, image, graphics, and bar code data. (2) The final representation of such an object on a physical medium. (3) See also *logical page*.

page definition. A resource used by PSF that defines the rules of transforming line data into pages and text controls.

page format. Synonym for *data map*.

page mode. The mode of operation in which a page printer can accept a page of data from a host processor to be printed on an all-points-addressable output medium. Data may consist of pages containing text, images, overlays, or page segments. Contrast with *compatibility model*.

page origin. Synonym for *logical page origin*.

page overlay. An electronic overlay that can be invoked for printing and positioned at any point on the page by an Include Page Overlay structured field in the print data. See *medium overlay*.

page position. A control in the copy group to assign the top-left boundary point of the logical page on a sheet for a data set. The page position is determined from the media origin.

page printer. Any of a class of printers that accepts MO:DCA-P pages, constructed of page data and images, among other things. Contrast with *line printer*.

Page Printer Formatting Aid (PPFA). An IBM licensed program you can use to create and store form definitions and page definitions, which are resource objects used for managing print jobs. By writing a command stream specifying form definitions, page definitions, or both, for executing PPFA, you can store the objects specified in the library. You can then use these objects to format printed output.

page segment. A resource containing MO:DCA data and images, prepared before formatting and included during printing. A page segment can contain text and images and can be included on any addressable point on a page or electronic overlay. A page segment assumes the environment of an object in which it is included.

PAGEDEF. A JCL parameter that specifies a page definition. See *page definition*.

parameter. (1) A variable that is given a constant value for a specified application and that may denote the application. (I) (A) (2) An item in a menu for which the user specifies a value or for which the system provides a value when the menu is interpreted. (3) Data passed between programs or procedures.

partial page. A page that does not contain all the intended data. Partial pages can be printed after an error is sensed.

partition. In basic N_UP printing, the division of the medium presentation space into a specified number of equal-sized areas in a manner determined by the current physical medium.

partitioned data set (PDS). A data set in direct access storage that is divided into partitions, called members, each of which can contain a program, part of a program, or data. Contrast with *sequential data set*.

pattern storage (PST). An area of storage that holds the raster patterns for fonts and images.

PDS. See *partitioned data set*.

pel. Synonym for *picture element*.

PEM. Print-error marker. See *exception highlighting*.

PEV. Print-error vector. See *exception highlighting*.

physical medium. A physical entity on which information is presented. Examples of a physical medium are a display screen, paper, foils, microfilm, or labels.

picture element. (1) In computer graphics, the smallest element of a physical medium that can be independently assigned color and intensity. (T) (2) The smallest element that can be printed or displayed on a physical medium. Picture elements per inch is often used as a measurement of presentation granularity. Synonymous with *pel*.

pitch. The character size represented by the number of characters that can be printed horizontally in an inch; for example, 10 pitch has 10 graphic characters per inch. Uniformly spaced fonts are measured in pitch. Contrast with *point*.

point. A unit of about 1/72 inch used in measuring type. Contrast with *pitch*.

point size. The height of a font in points.

portrait page presentation. The position of a printed sheet that has its short edges as the top and bottom and its long edges as the sides. Contrast with *landscape page presentation*.

PPFA. See *.Page Printer Formatting Aid*.

presentation device. A device that produces character shapes, graphics pictures, images, or bar code symbols on a physical medium. Examples of a physical medium are a display screen, paper, foils, microfilm, or labels.

Presentation Text Object Content Architecture (PTOCA). An architected collection of constructs used to interchange and present presentation text data.

print data stream. The data stream created by PSF and transmitted to the printer.

print direction. (1) The direction in which characters are added to a line. (2) In PSF, the specification of inline direction for the printing of text.

print-error marker. See *exception highlighting*.

Print-error vector. See *exception highlighting*.

print job. The data that the user submits to PSF to be printed. A print job can request the printing of multiple data sets.

print labeling. A controlled method of placing identification labels on each page of PSF printed output. See also *guaranteed print labeling*.

print position. Any location on a medium where a character can be printed.

print quality. (1) The measure of printed output against existing standards and in comparison with jobs printed previously. (2) The ability of some page printers to print data at more than one level of print quality, such as *asdraft* and *near-letter* quality.

print-quality levels. The capability on certain printers for you to specify more than one level of print quality, such as *draft* or *near letter quality*.

print server. (1) A functional unit that provides shared services to workstations over a network; for example, a file server, a print server, or a mail server. (T) (2) In a network, a data station that provides facilities to other stations; for example, a file server, a print server, or a mail server. (A) (3) In the AIX operating system, an application program that usually runs in the background and is controlled by the system program controller. (4) In TCP/IP, a system in a network that handles the requests of a system at another site, called a client-server.

Print Services Facility (PSF). A licensed program that manages and controls the input data stream and output data stream required by supported IBM page printers. PSF combines print data with other resources and printing controls to produce AFP output.

printable area. The area on a sheet of the paper where print can be placed.

printer. A presentation device that produces character shapes, graphics pictures, images, or bar-code symbols on a physical medium. Examples of a physical medium are a display screen, paper, foils, microfilm or labels. See *presentation device*.

printer-parameter member. In PSF/VSE, the member of a phase library containing user-specified printer parameters to print a job on a page printer. The printer-parameter macroinstruction provided with PSF/VSE stores the user-specified parameters as a member of a phase library.

printhead resolution. The number of pels that can be printed in an inch, both horizontally and vertically.

program temporary fix (PTF). A temporary solution or bypass of a problem diagnosed by IBM as resulting from a defect in a current unaltered release of the program.

programming request for price quotation (PRPQ). A customer request for a price quotation on alterations or additions to the functional capabilities of system control programming or licensed programs. The RPQ may be used in conjunction with computing system RPQs to solve unique data processing problems.

proportionally spaced font. A typographic font, or in some usages a mixed-pitch font. See *typographic font* and *mixed-pitch font*.

PSF. See *Print Services Facility*.

PSF Direct. A function of PSF for OS/2 or PSF for AIX that enables another PSF program (PSF for OS/390, PSF/VM, PSF/VSE, or PSF for AS/400), using the LU6.2 SNA protocol, to print remotely on PSF for OS/2 or PSF for AIX printers. The PSF program sends the print data stream directly to the PSF for OS/2 or PSF for AIX printer, bypassing the OS/2 or RISC/6000 spool. The operator of the originating system controls printing on the PSF for OS/2 or PSF for AIX printers, as though the printers were attached to the originating system.

PTF. Program temporary fix.

PTOCA. See *Presentation Text Object Content Architecture*.

R

raster font. A font technology in which the graphic characters are defined directly by the raster bit map. Contrast with *outline font*.

raster pattern. A pattern of bits with 0 (off) and 1 (on) that define the pels in an image. A 1-bit is a toned pel.

raster pattern overlay. An overlay loaded in the printer as a raster pattern rather than as a sequence of printer commands. Contrast with *coded overlay*.

raster pattern storage (RPS). An area of storage that holds raster patterns for fonts and images.

repositioning. A process in which Print Services Facility, following an indication from the printer or from JES of a potentially recoverable error, locates the correct spool record for recomposing one or more pages for printing.

request for price quotation (RPQ). A customer request for a price quotation on alterations or additions to the functional capabilities of a computing system,

hardware product, or device. The RPQ may be used in conjunction with programming RPQs to solve unique data processing problems.

resident fully described fonts. Fonts stored in a printer but that have most of the attributes that can be specified for host fonts.

resident symbol sets. A type of font stored in a printer that has fewer attributes than can be specified for fully described fonts.

resolution. (1) In computer graphics, a measure of the sharpness of an image, expressed as the number of lines and columns on the display screen. (2) The number of pels per unit of linear measure.

resource. (1) A collection of printing instructions used by Print Services Facility in addition to the print data set, to produce the printed output. PSF resources include coded fonts, font character sets, code pages, page segments, overlays, form definitions, and page definitions. (2) Any source of aid used for performing a task, for example disk storage space, computer processing time, and communications lines.

rotation. Synonym for *character rotation*. See also *orientation*.

routine. A program or sequence of instructions called by a program that may have some general or frequent use. (I) (A)

RPQ. See *request for price quotation*.

rule. A solid or patterned line of any weight, extending horizontally or vertically across a column, row, or page.

S

SCS. See *SNA Character String*.

SDLC. Synchronous Data Link Control.

security label. In a trusted computing base, a security label used to maintain multiple levels of security on a system. This label is a combination of a security class and a security level.

sense data. (1) Data describing an I/O error. Sense data is presented to a host system in response to a Sense I/O command. (2) In SNA, the data sent with a negative response indicating the reason for the response.

sequential data set. In MVS, a data set whose records are organized on the basis of their physical positions, such as on magnetic tape. Contrast with *partitioned data set*.

sheet. A division of the physical medium on which data is presented. The IPDS architecture defines four types of sheets: cut-sheet forms, continuous forms,

envelopes, and computer output on microfilm. Each sheet has a front and a back side. Some types of media consist of multiple sheets. For example, a roll of continuous forms can be divided at the perforations into rectangular sheets. Each sheet usually has carrier or tractor-feed strips, also. Microfilm is another example of a medium comprising multiple sheets, whereas envelopes comprise only one sheet. Synonymous with *form*.

simplex printing. Printing on only one side of the paper. Contrast with *duplex printing*.

single-byte coded font. A font in which the characters are defined by a 1-byte code point. A single-byte coded font has only one coded font section. Contrast with *double-byte coded font*.

SNA. Systems Network Architecture.

SNA Character String. In SNA, a character string composed of EBCDIC controls, optionally intermixed with end-user data, that is carried within a request/response unit.

SNA-attached. In PSF, a device linked to the host system through VTAM that uses an SNA protocol to transfer data. The device does not need to be physically connected to the host; some printers are attached to a control unit, a communication controller, or both, and they can transfer data over telecommunication lines. For example, a 3820 attached to a communication controller using the LU 6.2 communication protocol to transfer data to a communication controller is considered an SNA-attached printer. Contrast with *channel-attached*.

soft page segment. A resource that is not declared in the Map Page Segment structured field but is sent to the printer inline with data. Contrast with *hard page segment*.

spooled printing. A printing mode in which a print file is sent to a spooling subsystem. The spooling subsystem then directs the file to a printer.

storage. (1) A unit into which recorded text can be entered, in which it can be retained and processed, and from which it can be retrieved. (T) (2) The action of placing data into a storage device. (I) (3) A storage device. (A)

structured field. A self-identifying string of bytes and its data or parameters.

subgroup. A set of modifications within a copy group that applies to a certain number of copies of a form. A copy group can contain more than one subgroup.

suppression. Synonym for *text suppression*.

symbol set. A coded font that is usually simpler in structure than a fully described coded font. Symbol sets are used where typographic quality is not required.

Examples of devices that may not provide typographic quality are dot-matrix printers and displays.

symbology. Synonym for *bar code symbology*.

Synchronous Data Link Control (SDLC). A discipline for managing synchronous information transfer over a data link connection.

SYSOUT. See *system output stream*.

system output stream (SYSOUT). An indicator used in a data definition (DD) statement to signify that a data set is to be written on a system output unit.

Systems Network Architecture (SNA). In IBM networks, the description of the layered logical structure, formats, protocols, and operational sequences that are used for transmitting information units through networks, as well.

T

table reference character (TRC). An optional control character in an input record that identifies the font to be used to print the record. The table reference character corresponds to a font number defined in a page definition font list or to the order of font names listed in the job control CHARS parameter.

TCP/IP-attached. Includes all printers attached through the 7913, or attached directly to either token-ring or Ethernet LAN through TCP/IP. These are primarily the group 4 printers (that are attached through the 7913) and the AFCCU printers (through direct LAN attachment).

text. A graphic representation of information on an output medium. Text can consist of alphanumeric characters and symbols arranged in paragraphs, tables, and columns.

text orientation. A description of the appearance of text as a combination of print direction and character rotation.

text suppression. The intentional omission of portions of text, specified in a copy group in the form definition.

throughput. (1) A measure of the amount of work performed by a printer over a period of time, for example, the number of impressions per minute. (2) A measure of the amount of work performed by a computer system over a period of time, for example, the number of jobs per day. (I) (A)

token ring. A network configuration in which tokens are passed in a circuit from node to node. A node that is ready to send can capture the token and insert data for transmission.

trace. A record of the execution of a computer program. It exhibits the sequences in which the instructions were executed. (A)

TRC. Table reference character.

tumble duplex printing. Duplex printing for sheets that are to be bound on the short edge of the paper regardless of whether the printing is portrait or landscape. Contrast with *normal duplex printing*.

two-channel switch. A hardware feature that allows an I/O device to be attached to two channels. A dynamic switch can be added, which allows both interfaces to be enabled at the same time with channel selection determined by programming.

type size. (1) A measurement in pitch or points of the height and width of a graphic character in a font. (2) One of the many attributes of a font; other attributes, for example, are weight and width.

typeface. A collection of fonts all having the same style, weight, and width. Each font differs from the others by point size or type family.

typographic font. A font in which the distance between characters varies. The distance from one character to another is adjusted to improve the visual flow of text by eliminating excess space.

U

UCS. See *universal character set*.

unbounded-box font. A font designed to use unbounded character boxes. Contrast with *bounded-box font*.

unformatted print records. Line data made up of fields of data that have not been formatted into print lines. PSF uses a page definition to format these records for printing on page printers.

uniformly spaced font. A font in which the characters have the same character increment. Contrast with *proportionally spaced font*.

universal character set (UCS). A printer feature that permits the use of a variety of character arrays.

UPA. See *user printable area*.

user printable area (UPA). The area within the valid printable area (VPA) where user-generated data can print without causing an exception condition. See also *valid printable area*.

V

valid printable area (VPA). The intersection of a logical page with the area of the medium presentation

space in which printing is allowed. If the logical page is a secure overlay, the area in which printing is allowed is the physical printable area. If the logical page is not a secure overlay, and if a user printable area is defined, the area in which printing is allowed is the intersection of the physical printable area with the user printable area. If a user printable area is not defined, the area in which printing is allowed is the physical printable area. See also *logical page* and *user printable area*.

value. A quantity assigned to a constant, a variable, a parameter, or a symbol in a command.

Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (VTAM). A set of programs that maintains control of the communication between terminals and application programs running under DOS/VS, OS/VS1, and OS/VS2 operating systems.

VPA. See *valid printable area*.

VTAM. Virtual Telecommunications Access Method.

W

wide forms. (1) Forms that have their longer edges at the top and bottom and their shorter edges at the sides. (2) Forms that have perforations on the longer edge of the paper and tractor holes on the shorter edge.

X

XA. Extended Architecture.

X-axis. In printing, an axis perpendicular to the direction in which the paper moves through the printer. See also *Y-axis*.

Y

Y-axis. In printing, an axis parallel with the direction in which the paper moves through the printer. See also *X-axis*.

Index

Numerics

- 3800 printers
 - migrating applications 157
 - 4230 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 120
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 119
 - font technologies 12
 - fonts 122
 - media specifications 120
 - operator-adjustable forms 122
 - print-quality levels 122
 - printable area 120
 - printer capabilities 124
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
 - 4232 printer
 - attachment mode 22
 - attachments 126
 - characteristics 125
 - media specifications 126
 - operator-adjustable forms 127
 - printable area 126
 - related publications 189
 - 4247 printer
 - attachment mode 22
 - attachments 131
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 129
 - font technologies 12
 - IPDS print-quality levels 135
 - media specifications 131
 - operator-adjustable forms 135
 - printable area 130
 - printer capabilities 137
 - related publications 190
 - selecting the printing medium 130
 - supported IPDS functions 15
 - 4400 thermal printer
 - attachment mode 22
 - attachments 141
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 139
 - Model 004
 - media specifications 140
 - Model 006
 - media specifications 140
 - Model 008
 - media specifications 140
 - printable area 140
 - 4400 Thermal printer
 - related publications 190
 - 6400 printer
 - attachment mode 22
 - attachments 147
 - bar code support 17
 - 6400 printer (*continued*)
 - characteristics 145
 - font technologies 12
 - IPDS print-quality levels 149
 - media specifications 146
 - operator-adjustable forms 148
 - printable area 146
 - printer capabilities 150
 - related publications 190
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- ## A
- activate resource (load resource equivalence) 177
 - additional printing information 1
 - Advanced Function Common Control Unit (AFCCU) 1
 - AFCCU
 - default font 177
 - description of 1
 - printers 1
 - AFP
 - related publications 185
 - AFP font collection 11
 - AFP products
 - related publications 191
 - Arabic Expanded Core Fonts 178
 - AS/400 Host Print transform 18
 - attachment mode
 - for 4230 printer 21
 - for 4232 printer 22
 - for 4247 printer 22
 - for 4400 thermal printer 22
 - for 6400 printer 22
 - for InfoColor 70 printer 21
 - for Infoprint 12 printer 19
 - for Infoprint 2000–DP1 printer 20
 - with AFCCU feature 20
 - for Infoprint 2000–NP1 printer 20
 - for Infoprint 2000–RP1 printer 20
 - for Infoprint 21 printer 19
 - for Infoprint 3000–ED1/ED2 printer 20
 - for Infoprint 3000–ES1 printer 20
 - for Infoprint 32 printer 19
 - for Infoprint 40 printer 19
 - for Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 printer 21
 - for Infoprint 4000–ID3/ID4 printer 21
 - for Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 printer 21
 - for Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 printer 21
 - for Infoprint 4000–IR3/IR4 printer 21
 - for Infoprint 4000–IS1 printer 21
 - for Infoprint 4000–IS2 printer 21
 - for Infoprint 60 printer 20
 - for Infoprint 62 printer 23
 - for Infoprint 70 printer 20
 - for Infoprint Color 100 printer 21
 - for Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer 21
 - for Infoprint Color 130 printer 21
 - for Infoprint Color 8 printer 19

- attachment mode (*continued*)
 - for Network Printer 12 19
 - for Network Printer 17 19
- attachments
 - 4230 printer 120
 - 4232 printer 126
 - 4247 printer 131
 - 4400 thermal printer 141
 - 6400 printer 147
 - for Infoprint 4000-IS1 printer 82
 - for Infoprint 4000-IS2 printer 82
 - InfoColor 70 printer 103
 - Infoprint 12 printer 39
 - Infoprint 20 printer 43
 - Infoprint 2000-DP1 printer 71
 - Infoprint 2000-NP1 printer 67
 - Infoprint 2000-RP1 printer 67
 - Infoprint 21 printer 47
 - Infoprint 3000-ED1/ED2 printer 75
 - Infoprint 3000-ES1 printer 75
 - Infoprint 32 printer 54
 - Infoprint 40 printer 54
 - Infoprint 60 printer 59
 - Infoprint 62 printer 153
 - Infoprint 70 printer 63
 - Infoprint Color 100 printer 107
 - Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer 115
 - Infoprint Color 130 printer 111
 - Infoprint Color 8 printer 35
 - Network Printer 12 27
 - Network Printer 17 31
 - on Infoprint 4000-ID1/ID2 printer 93
 - on Infoprint 4000-ID3/ID4 printer 93
 - on Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 printer 98
 - on Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 printer 87
 - on Infoprint 4000-IR3/IR4 printer 87

B

- bar code support
 - on IPDS printers 17

C

- captured fonts 12
- code page
 - Arabic EBCDIC and ASCII 183
 - Cyrillic and Greek EBCDIC and ASCII 183
 - Hebrew EBCDIC and ASCII 183
 - Latin 2/3/4/5 EBCDIC and ASCII 182
 - Latin EBCDIC DCF 182
 - Symbols 183
- code pages
 - for the AFCCU Expanded Core Fonts 181
- coded fonts, definition 171
- compatibility
 - among PSF-supported printers 157
 - page presentation 157
- continuous form production printer characteristics
 - Infoprint 3000-ED1/ED2 printer 4
 - Infoprint 3000-ES1 printer 4

- continuous form production printer characteristics (*continued*)
 - Infoprint 4000-ID1/ID2 printer 6
 - Infoprint 4000-ID3/ID4 printer 6
 - Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 printer 6
 - Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 printer 6
 - Infoprint 4000-IR3/IR4 printer 6
 - Infoprint 4000-IS1 printer 4
 - Infoprint 4000-IS2 printer 4
- continuous forms, narrow and wide 157
- cut sheet production printers characteristics
 - Infoprint 2000-DP1 printer 4
 - Infoprint 2000-NP1 printer 4
 - Infoprint 2000-RP1 printer 4
 - Infoprint 60 printer 4
 - Infoprint 70 printer 4
- Cyrillic Greek Expanded Core Fonts 180

D

- data stream and architecture
 - related publications 185
- DBCS fonts
 - related publications 186
- double-byte fonts
 - related publications 186
- downloaded fonts 12

E

- enterprise color printer characteristics
 - InfoColor 70 printer 8
 - Infoprint Color 100 printer 8
 - Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer 8
 - Infoprint Color 130 printer 8

F

- font character sets, definition 172
- fonts
 - 4028 Font Metrics 171
 - AFCCU printers resident 177
 - AFP font collection 11
 - Arabic Expanded Core fonts 178
 - BookMaster 171
 - captured 12
 - character attributes 172
 - character properties 172
 - character sets 172
 - code page, definition 172
 - coded 171
 - Compatibility 171
 - Core Interchange 178
 - Cyrillic Greek Expanded Core fonts 180
 - default, for AFCCU printers 177
 - downloaded 12
 - Hebrew Expanded Core fonts 178
 - IBM Expanded Core 171
 - Latin1 Expanded Core fonts 179
 - Latin2/3/5 Expanded Core fonts 179
 - Latin4 Expanded Core fonts 179

- fonts (*continued*)
 - load font equivalence 177
 - load resource equivalence 177
 - Network Printer Resource Utility 14
 - OCR, APL, and Katakana AFCCU resident fonts 181
 - on 4230 printer 122
 - on IPDS printers 12
 - PCL Intellifonts 14
 - PostScript Type1 14
 - printer resident 171
 - related publications 185
 - resident 12
 - resident in printers 171
 - structure 171
 - Symbols Expanded Core fonts 180
 - technologies
 - IPDS printers 12
 - PCL printers 13
 - PostScript printers 13
 - with PSF 12
 - terminology 171
 - TrueType 14
 - XOA-RRL replies 178

H

- Hebrew Expanded Core Fonts 178

I

- IBM Printing Systems internet page 1
- industrial impact and non-impact printer characteristics
 - 4230 printer 9
 - 4232 printer 9
 - 4247 printer 9
 - 4400 thermal printer 10
 - 6400 printer 10
 - Infoprint 62 printer 10
- InfoColor 70 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 103
 - characteristics 101
 - media specifications 103
 - printable area 102
- Infoprint 12 printer
 - attachments 39
 - characteristics 37
 - media specifications 38
 - printable area 38
 - related publications 187
- Infoprint 20 printer
 - attachment mode 19
 - attachments 43
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 41
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 42
 - printable area 42
 - related publications 187
 - supported IPDS functions 14
- Infoprint 2000–DP1 printer
 - attachment mode 20
 - with AFCCU feature 20
 - attachments 71
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 69
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 70
 - printable area 70
 - related publications 188
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 2000–NP1 printer
 - attachment mode 20
 - attachments 67
 - characteristics 65
 - media specifications 66
 - printable area 66
- Infoprint 2000–RP1 printer
 - attachment mode 20
 - attachments 67
 - characteristics 65
 - media specifications 66
 - printable area 66
- Infoprint 21 printer
 - attachment mode 19
 - attachments 47
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 45
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 46
 - printable area 46
 - related publications 188
 - supported IPDS functions 14
- Infoprint 3000–ED1/ED2 printer
 - attachment mode 20
 - attachments 75
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 73
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 75
 - printable area 74
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 3000–ES1 printer
 - attachment mode 20
 - attachments 75
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 73
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 75
 - printable area 74
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 32 printer
 - attachment mode 19
 - attachments 54
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 51
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 53
 - printable area 53

- Infoprint 32 printer *(continued)*
 - related publications 188
 - supported IPDS functions 14
- Infoprint 40 printer
 - attachment mode 19
 - attachments 54
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 51
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 53
 - printable area 53
 - related publications 188
 - supported IPDS functions 14
- Infoprint 4000–ID1/ID2 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 93
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 89
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 92
 - printable area 90
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 4000–ID3/ID4 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 93
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 89
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 92
 - printable area 90
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 4000–ID5/ID6 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 98
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 95
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 98
 - printable area 96
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 4000–IR1/IR2 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 87
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 85
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 87
 - printable area 86
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 4000–IR3/IR4 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 87
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 85
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 87
 - printable area 86
- Infoprint 4000–IR3/IR4 printer *(continued)*
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 4000–IS1 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 82
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 79
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 82
 - printable area 81
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 4000–IS2 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 82
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 79
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 82
 - printable area 81
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 60 printer
 - attachment mode 20
 - attachments 59
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 57
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 59
 - printable area 58
 - related publications 188
 - supported IPDS functions 14
- Infoprint 62 printer
 - attachment mode 23
 - attachments 153
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 151
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 153
 - printable area 153
 - printer characteristics 4
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint 70
 - bar code support 17
- Infoprint 70 printer
 - attachment mode 20
 - attachments 63
 - characteristics 61
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 62
 - printable area 62
 - related publications 188
 - supported IPDS functions 14
- Infoprint Color 100 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 107
 - characteristics 105
 - media specifications 107
 - printable area 106

- Infoprint Color 100 printer *(continued)*
 - related publications 189
- Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 115
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 113
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 115
 - printable area 114
 - related publications 189
 - supported IPDS functions 15
- Infoprint Color 130 printer
 - attachment mode 21
 - attachments 111
 - characteristics 109
 - media specifications 111
 - printable area 110
- Infoprint Color 8 printer
 - attachment mode 19
 - attachments 35
 - characteristics 33
 - media specifications 34
 - printable area 34
 - related publications 187
 - selecting the printing medium 34
- Infoprint Manager for AIX
 - related publications 186
- Infoprint Manager for AIX transform 18
- Infoprint Manager for NT transform 18
- Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000
 - related publications 186
- Infoprint Server for OS/390 V2R8- V2R10
 - related publications 186
- Infoprint Server for z/OS V1R1
 - related publications 186
- Infoprint12 printer
 - attachment mode 19
- internet page, IBM Printing Systems 1
- IPDS functions, supported 14
- IPDS print-quality levels
 - on 4247 printer 135
 - on 6400 printer 149
- IPDS printers
 - bar code support 17
 - fonts 12

L

- landscape page presentation 161
- Latin1 Expanded Core Fonts 179
- Latin2/3/5 Expanded Core Fonts 179
- Latin4 Expanded Core Fonts 179
- load
 - font equivalence 177
 - resource equivalence 177

M

- media specifications
 - 4230 printer 120

- media specifications *(continued)*
 - 4232 printer 126
 - 4247 printer 131
 - 4400 Model 004 thermal printer 140
 - 4400 Model 006 thermal printer 140
 - 4400 Model 008 thermal printer 140
 - 6400 printer 146
 - InfoColor 70 printer 103
 - Infoprint 12 printer 38
 - Infoprint 20 printer 42
 - Infoprint 2000-DP1 printer 70
 - Infoprint 2000-NP1 printer 66
 - Infoprint 2000-RP1 printer 66
 - Infoprint 21 printer 46
 - Infoprint 3000-ED1/ED2 printer 75
 - Infoprint 3000-ES1 printer 75
 - Infoprint 32 printer 53
 - Infoprint 40 printer 53
 - Infoprint 4000-ID1/ID2 printer 92
 - Infoprint 4000-ID3/ID4 printer 92
 - Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 printer 98
 - Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 printer 87
 - Infoprint 4000-IR3/IR4 printer 87
 - Infoprint 4000-IS1 printer 82
 - Infoprint 4000-IS2 printer 82
 - Infoprint 60 printer 59
 - Infoprint 62 printer 153
 - Infoprint 70 printer 62
 - Infoprint Color 100 printer 107
 - Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer 115
 - Infoprint Color 130 printer 111
 - Infoprint Color 8 printer 34
 - Network Printer 12 26
 - Network Printer 17 30
- migrating 3800 printers applications 157

N

- national language code pages 174
- Network Printer 12
 - attachment mode 19
 - attachments 27
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 25
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 26
 - printable area 26
 - related publications 186
 - supported IPDS functions 14
- Network Printer 17
 - attachment mode 19
 - attachments 31
 - bar code support 17
 - characteristics 29
 - font technologies 12
 - media specifications 30
 - printable area 30
 - related publications 187
 - supported IPDS functions 14
- Network Printer Resource Utility
 - fonts 14
 - overlays 14

O

- OCR, APL, and Katakana AFCCU resident fonts 181
- operator-adjustable forms
 - on 4230 printer 122
 - on 4232 printer 127
 - on 4247 printer 135
 - on 6400 printer 148
- OS/390 Infoprint Server transform 18
- overlays
 - Network Printer Resource Utility 14

P

- page presentation
 - compatibility 157
 - landscape 162
 - portrait 161
 - upside-down 161
- portrait page presentation 161, 162
- print medium, selecting
 - for 4247 printer 130
 - for Infoprint Color 8 printer 34
- print-quality levels
 - on 4230 printer 122
- printable area
 - on 4230 printer 120
 - on 4232 printer 126
 - on 4247 printer 130
 - on 4400 thermal printer 140
 - on 6400 printer 146
 - on InfoColor 70 printer 102
 - on Infoprint 12 printer 38
 - on Infoprint 20 printer 42
 - on Infoprint 2000-DP1 printer 70
 - on Infoprint 2000-NP1 printer 66
 - on Infoprint 2000-RP1 printer 66
 - on Infoprint 21 printer 46
 - on Infoprint 3000-ED1/ED2 printer 74
 - on Infoprint 3000-ES1 printer 74
 - on Infoprint 32 printer 53
 - on Infoprint 40 printer 53
 - on Infoprint 4000-ID1/ID2 printer 90
 - on Infoprint 4000-ID3/ID4 printer 90
 - on Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 printer 96
 - on Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 printer 86
 - on Infoprint 4000-IR3/IR4 printer 86
 - on Infoprint 4000-IS1 printer 81
 - on Infoprint 4000-IS2 printer 81
 - on Infoprint 60 printer 58
 - on Infoprint 62 printer 153
 - on Infoprint 70 printer 62
 - on Infoprint Color 100 printer 106
 - on Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer 114
 - on Infoprint Color 130 printer 110
 - on Infoprint Color 8 printer 34
 - on Network Printer 12 26
 - on Network Printer 17 30
- printer capabilities
 - of 4230 printer 124
 - of 6400 printer 150

- printer capabilities (*continued*)
 - on 4247 printer 137
- printer characteristics
 - continuous form production printer
 - Infoprint 3000 ES1 printer 4
 - Infoprint 3000-ED1/ED2 printer 4
 - Infoprint 4000-ID1/ID2 printer 6
 - Infoprint 4000-ID3/ID4 printer 6
 - Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 printer 6
 - Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 printer 6
 - Infoprint 4000-IR3/IR4 printer 6
 - Infoprint 4000-IS1 printer 4
 - Infoprint 4000-IS2 printer 4
 - Infoprint 62 printer 4
 - cut sheet production printers
 - Infoprint 2000-DP1 printer 4
 - Infoprint 2000-NP1 printer 4
 - Infoprint 2000-RP1 printer 4
 - Infoprint 60 printer 4
 - Infoprint 70 printer 4
 - enterprise color printers
 - InfoColor 70 printer 8
 - Infoprint Color 100 printer 8
 - Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer 8
 - Infoprint Color 130 printer 8
 - industrial impact and non-impact printers
 - 4230 printer 9
 - 4232 printer 9
 - 4247 printer 9
 - 4400 thermal printer 10
 - 6400 printer 10
 - Infoprint 62 printer 10
 - workgroup laser printers
 - Infoprint 12 printer 2
 - Infoprint 20 printer 3
 - Infoprint 21 printer 3
 - Infoprint 32 printer 3
 - Infoprint 40 printer 3
 - Infoprint Color 8 printer 2
 - Network Printer 12 2
 - Network Printer 17 2
- printers
 - 4230 printer 119
 - 4232 printer 125
 - 4247 printer 129
 - 6400 printer 145
 - InfoColor 70 printer 101
 - Infoprint 12 printer 37
 - Infoprint 20 printer 41
 - Infoprint 2000-NP1 printer 65
 - Infoprint 2000-RP1 printer 65
 - Infoprint 21 printer 45
 - Infoprint 3000-ED1/ED2 printer 73
 - Infoprint 3000-ES1 printer 73
 - Infoprint 32 printer 51
 - Infoprint 40 printer 51
 - Infoprint 4000-ID1/ID2 printer 89
 - Infoprint 4000-ID3/ID4 printer 89
 - Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 printer 95
 - Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 printer 85
 - Infoprint 4000-IR3/IR4 printer 85

printers (continued)

- Infoprint 4000-IS1 printer 79
- Infoprint 4000-IS2 printer 79
- Infoprint 60 printer 57
- Infoprint 62 printer 151
- Infoprint 70 printer 61
- Infoprint Color 100 printer 105
- Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer 113
- Infoprint Color 130 printer 109
- Infoprint Color 8 printer 33
- Infoprint-2000 DP1 printer 69
- Network Printer 12 25
- Network Printer 17 29
- on 4400 thermal printer 139
- PSF/400
 - related publications 191
- PSF font support 12
- PSF for OS/390
 - related publications 190
- PSF/VM
 - related publications 190
- PSF/VSE
 - related publications 190

R

- related publications 185
 - 4230 printer 189
 - 4232 printer 189
 - 4247 printer 190
 - 4400 Thermal printer 190
 - 6400 printer 190
- Advanced Function Presentation 185
- AFP products 191
- data stream and architecture 185
- DBCS fonts 186
- double-byte fonts 186
- fonts 185
 - Infoprint 12 printer 187
 - Infoprint 20 printer 187
 - Infoprint 2000-DP1 printer 188
 - Infoprint 21 printer 188
 - Infoprint 3000-ED1/ED2 printer 189
 - Infoprint 3000-ES1 printer 189
 - Infoprint 32 188
 - Infoprint 40 188
 - Infoprint 4000-ID1/ID2 printer 189
 - Infoprint 4000-ID3/ID4 printer 189
 - Infoprint 4000-ID5/ID6 printer 189
 - Infoprint 4000-IR1/IR2 printer 189
 - Infoprint 4000-IR3/IR4 printer 189
 - Infoprint 4000-IS1 printer 189
 - Infoprint 4000-IS2 printer 189
 - Infoprint 60 printer 188
 - Infoprint 62 printer 189
 - Infoprint 70 printer 188
 - Infoprint Color 100 printer 189
 - Infoprint Color 130 Plus printer 189
 - Infoprint Color 8 printer 187
 - Infoprint Manager for AIX 186

related publications 185 (continued)

- Infoprint Manager for Windows NT and Windows 2000 186
- Infoprint Server for OS/390 V2R8- V2R10 186
- Infoprint Server for z/OS V1R1 186
- Network Printer 12 186
- Network Printer 17 187
- PSF/400 191
- PSF for OS/390 190
- PSF/VM 190
- PSF/VSE 190
- resident fonts 11
 - AFCCU Arabic Expanded Core fonts 178
 - AFCCU Cyrillic Greek Expanded Core fonts 180
 - AFCCU Hebrew Expanded Core fonts 178
 - AFCCU Latin1 Expanded Core fonts 179
 - AFCCU Latin2/3/5 Expanded Core fonts 179
 - AFCCU Latin4 Expanded Core fonts 179
 - AFCCU printers 177
 - AFCCU Symbols Expanded Core fonts 180
 - code pages for AFCCU Expanded Core Fonts 181
 - OCR, APL, and Katakana AFCCU resident fonts 181

S

- supported IPDS functions 14
- symbol sets
 - on 4230 printer 122
- Symbols Expanded Core Fonts 180

T

- transforms
 - AS/400 Host Print 18
 - Infoprint Manager for AIX 18
 - Infoprint Manager for NT 18
 - Infoprint Server for OS/390 18

W

- workgroup laser printer characteristics
 - Infoprint 12 printer 2
 - Infoprint 20 printer 3
 - Infoprint 21 printer 3
 - Infoprint 32 printer 3
 - Infoprint 40 printer 3
 - Infoprint Color 8 printer 2
 - Network Printer 12 2
 - Network Printer 17 2

X

- XOA-RRL replies 178

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You

IBM Printing Systems: Printer Information

Publication No. S544-5750-00

Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this book?

| | Very Satisfied | Satisfied | Neutral | Dissatisfied | Very Dissatisfied |
|----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Overall satisfaction | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

How satisfied are you that the information in this book is:

| | Very Satisfied | Satisfied | Neutral | Dissatisfied | Very Dissatisfied |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Accurate | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Complete | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Easy to find | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Easy to understand | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Well organized | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Applicable to your tasks | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Please tell us how we can improve this book:

Thank you for your responses. May we contact you? Yes No

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Name

Address

Company or Organization

Phone No.



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

IBM Corporation
Information Development
IBM Printing Systems
Department H7FE Building 003G
PO Box 1900 Boulder, CO 80301-9817



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



File Number: S370-40



Printed in the United States of America
on recycled paper containing 10%
recovered post-consumer fiber.

S544-5750-00



Free Manuals Download Website

<http://myh66.com>

<http://usermanuals.us>

<http://www.somanuals.com>

<http://www.4manuals.cc>

<http://www.manual-lib.com>

<http://www.404manual.com>

<http://www.luxmanual.com>

<http://aubethermostatmanual.com>

Golf course search by state

<http://golfingnear.com>

Email search by domain

<http://emailbydomain.com>

Auto manuals search

<http://auto.somanuals.com>

TV manuals search

<http://tv.somanuals.com>